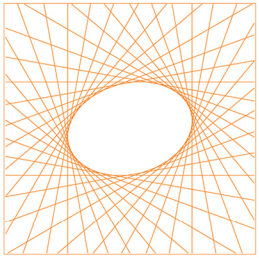
second edition

lectures on quantum mechanics

simple systems



berthold-georg englert

lectures on quantum mechanics

simple systems

second edition

Other Lecture Notes by the Author

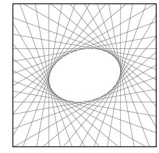
Lectures on Classical Electrodynamics
ISBN: 978-981-4596-92-3
ISBN: 978-981-4596-93-0 (pbk)

Lectures on Classical Mechanics
ISBN: 978-981-4678-44-5
ISBN: 978-981-4678-45-2 (pbk)

Lectures on Statistical Mechanics
ISBN: 978-981-12-2457-7
ISBN: 978-981-122-554-3 (pbk)

lectures on quantum mechanics

simple systems



second edition

Berthold-Georg Englert
Beijing Institute of Technology, China
National University of Singapore, Singapore

World Scientific

NEW JERSEY • LONDON • SINGAPORE • BEIJING • SHANGHAI • HONG KONG • TAIPEI • CHENNAI • TOKYO

Published by

World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

5 Toh Tuck Link, Singapore 596224

USA office: 27 Warren Street, Suite 401-402, Hackensack, NJ 07601

UK office: 57 Shelton Street, Covent Garden, London WC2H 9HE

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Englert, Berthold-Georg, 1953– author.
Title: Lectures on quantum mechanics / Berthold-Georg Englert.
Description: Second edition, corrected and enlarged. | Hackensack : World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., 2024. | Includes bibliographical references and index. |
Contents: Basic matters -- Simple systems -- Perturbed evolution.
Identifiers: LCCN 2023040959 (print) | LCCN 2023040960 (ebook) |
ISBN 9789811284724 (v. 1 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811284984 (v. 1 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284755 (v. 2 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811284991 (v. 2 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284786 (v. 3 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811285004 (v. 3 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284731 (v. 1 ; ebook) | ISBN 9789811284762 (v. 2 ; ebook) |
ISBN 9789811284793 (v. 3 ; ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Quantum theory. | Physics.
Classification: LCC QC174.125 .E54 2023 (print) | LCC QC174.125 (ebook) |
DDC 530.12--dc23/eng/20231011
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023040959
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023040960

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Copyright © 2024 by World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

All rights reserved. This book, or parts thereof, may not be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or any information storage and retrieval system now known or to be invented, without written permission from the publisher.

For photocopying of material in this volume, please pay a copying fee through the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, USA. In this case permission to photocopy is not required from the publisher.

For any available supplementary material, please visit
https://www.worldscientific.com/worldscibooks/10.1142/13636#t=suppl

Printed in Singapore

To my teachers, colleagues, and students

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

This book on the quantum mechanics of *Simple Systems* grew out of a set of lecture notes for a third-year undergraduate course at the National University of Singapore (NUS). The reader is expected to have the minimal knowledge of a standard brief introduction to quantum mechanics with its typical emphasis on one-dimensional position wave functions.

Proceeding from there, Dirac's formalism of kets, bras, and all that is introduced immediately. In this natural language of the trade, the elementary situations of no force, constant force, and linear restoring force are then dealt with in considerable detail, with Schrödinger's and Heisenberg's equations of motion on equal footing. After treating orbital angular momentum and hydrogen-like atoms, there follows a final chapter on approximation methods, from the Hellmann–Feynman theorem to the WKB quantization rule. For the benefit of the learning student, intermediate steps are not skipped and dozens of exercises are incorporated into the text.

Two companion books on *Basic Matters* and *Perturbed Evolution* cover the material of the preceding and subsequent courses at NUS for second- and fourth-year students, respectively. The three books are, however, not strictly sequential but rather independent of each other and largely self-contained. In fact, there is quite some overlap and a considerable amount of repeated material. While the repetitions send a useful message to the self-studying reader about what is more important and what is less, one could do without them and teach most of *Basic Matters*, *Simple Systems*, and *Perturbed Evolution* in a coherent two-semester course on quantum mechanics.

All three books owe their existence to the outstanding teachers, colleagues, and students from whom I learned so much. I dedicate these lectures to them.

I am grateful for the encouragement of Professors Choo Hiap Oh and Kok Khoo Phua who initiated this project. The professional help by the staff of World Scientific Publishing Co. was crucial for the completion; I acknowledge the invaluable support of Miss Ying Oi Chiew and Miss Lai Fun Kwong with particular gratitude. But nothing would have come about, were it not for the initiative and devotion of Miss Jia Li Goh who turned the original handwritten notes into electronic files that I could then edit.

I wish to thank my dear wife Ola for her continuing understanding and patience by which she is giving me the peace of mind that is the source of all achievements.

Singapore, March 2006 *BG Englert*

Note on the second edition

The feedback received from students and colleagues, together with my own critical take on the three companion books on quantum mechanics, suggested rather strongly that the books would benefit from a revision. This task has now been completed.

Many readers have contributed entries to the list of errata. I wish to thank all contributors sincerely and extend special thanks to Miss Hong Zhenxi and Professor Lim Hock.

In addition to correcting the errors, I tied up some loose ends and brought the three books in line with the later volumes in the "Lectures on ..." series. There is now a glossary, and the exercises, which were interspersed throughout the text, are collected after the main chapters and supplemented by hints.

The team led by Miss Nur Syarfeena Binte Mohd Fauzi at World Scientific Publishing Co. contributed greatly to getting the three books into shape. I thank them very much for their efforts.

Beijing and Singapore, November 2023 *BG Englert*

Contents

Preface **vii**

Glossary **xi**
Miscellanea xi
Latin alphabet xii
Greek alphabet and Greek-Latin combinations xiv

1. Quantum Kinematics Reviewed **1**
1.1 Schrödinger's wave function 1
1.2 Digression: Vectors, coordinates, and all that 3
1.3 Dirac's kets and bras 9
1.4 xp transformation function 15
1.5 Position and momentum operators, and functions of them 19
1.6 Traces and statistical operators 21
1.7 Algebraic completeness of operators X and P 29
1.8 Weyl commutator, Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff relations . 33

2. Quantum Dynamics Reviewed **37**
2.1 Temporal evolution 37
2.2 Time transformation functions 45

3. Examples **49**
3.1 Force-free motion 49
3.1.1 Time-dependent spreads 54
3.1.2 Uncertainty ellipse 56
3.2 Constant force 58
3.3 Time-dependent force 62

3.4 Harmonic oscillator 66
3.4.1 Ladder operators 71
3.4.2 Coherent states 77
3.4.3 Completeness of the coherent states 81
3.4.4 Fock states and coherent states 83
3.4.5 Time dependence 84
3.5 Two-dimensional harmonic oscillator 89
3.5.1 Isotropy 89
3.5.2 Eigenstates 93

4. Orbital Angular Momentum **97**
4.1 Commutation relations 97
4.2 Eigenvalues and eigenstates 102
4.3 Differential operators for polar coordinates 105
4.4 Differential operators for spherical coordinates 108

5. Hydrogen-like Atoms **113**
5.1 Hamilton operator, Schrödinger equation 113
5.2 Wave functions 117
5.2.1 Two-dimensional harmonic oscillator 117
5.2.2 Hydrogenic atoms 121

6. Approximation Methods **125**
6.1 Hellmann–Feynman theorem 125
6.2 Virial theorem 128
6.3 Rayleigh–Ritz variational method 131
6.4 Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory 138
6.5 Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory 143
6.6 Perturbation theory for degenerate states 148
6.7 Linear Stark effect 150
6.8 WKB approximation 155

Exercises with Hints **167**
Exercises for Chapters 1–6 167
Hints 182

Index **189**

Glossary

Here is a list of the symbols used in the text; the numbers in square brackets indicate the pages of first occurrence or of other significance.

Miscellanea

0	null symbol: number 0, or null column, or null matrix, or null ket, or null bra, or null operator, *et cetera*
1	unit symbol: number 1, or unit matrix, or identity operator, *et cetera*; exception: the unit dyadic $\overleftrightarrow{1}$ [6]
$A \mathrel{\widehat{=}} B$	read "A represents B" or "A is represented by B"
$\mathrm{Max}\{\ \}$, $\mathrm{Min}\{\ \}$	maximum, minimum of a set of real numbers
(x, y)	inner product of x and y
a^*, $\lvert a \rvert$	complex conjugate of a, absolute value of a
$\mathrm{Re}(a)$, $\mathrm{Im}(a)$	real, imaginary part of a: $a = \mathrm{Re}(a) + \mathrm{i}\,\mathrm{Im}(a)$
$a = \lvert \boldsymbol{a} \rvert$	length of vector $\boldsymbol{a}$
$\boldsymbol{a} \cdot \boldsymbol{b}$, $\boldsymbol{a} \times \boldsymbol{b}$	inner or scalar, vector product of vectors $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$
$\vec{r}$, $r^{\downarrow}$, $\overleftrightarrow{O}$	row-type vector [3], column-type vector [4], dyadic [7]
A^{T}, A^{-1}	transpose of A: $\vec{r}^{\,\mathrm{T}} = r^{\downarrow}$ [4], inverse of A: $AA^{-1} = 1$ [9]
$A^{\dagger}$	adjoint of A: $\langle\ \rvert = \lvert\ \rangle^{\dagger}$ [10]
$\det(A)$, $\mathrm{tr}(A)$	determinant [147], trace of A [22]
$\lvert\ \rangle$, $\langle\ \rvert$; $\lvert 1 \rangle$, $\langle x, t \rvert$	generic ket, bra; labeled ket, bra [9,10,37]
$\langle a, t_1 \rvert b, t_2 \rangle$	time transformation function [45]
$\lvert \ldots, t \rangle$, $\langle \ldots, t \rvert$	ket, bra at time t [37]
$\langle\ \rvert\ \rangle$, $\lvert\ \rangle\langle\ \rvert$	bra-ket, ket-bra [21]
$\overline{A}$, $\langle A \rangle$	mean, expectation value of A [19,21]
$[A, B]$	commutator of A and B [31]
$x!$	factorial of x [76]
$f^2(x)$, $f^{-1}(x)$	square, inverse of the function $x \mapsto f(x)$: $f^2(x) = f\big(f(x)\big)$, $f\big(f^{-1}(x)\big) = x$, $f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = x$
$f(x)^2$, $f(x)^{-1}$	square, reciprocal of the function value: $f(x)^2 = \big(f(x)\big)^2$, $f(x)^{-1} = 1/f(x)$

$\mathrm{d}t$, δt	differential, variation of t
$\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}$, $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}$	total, parametric time derivative
$\boldsymbol{\nabla}$	gradient vector differential operator
$\dfrac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{R}}$, $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{P}}$	gradient with respect to $\boldsymbol{R}$, to $\boldsymbol{P}$ [98]
$\otimes$	tensor product: $\lvert a\rangle \otimes \lvert b\rangle = \lvert a, b\rangle$

Latin alphabet

a	length scale [18], eigenvalue of ladder operator A [77]
a_0	Bohr radius [113]
$a(x,p)$	phase-space function for operator A [30]
$a(X;P)$	ordered function of operators X and P [30]
$\boldsymbol{a}$, $\boldsymbol{b}$	numerical vectors [97]
$A, A^\dagger$	harmonic-oscillator ladder operators [72]
$A_j, A_j^\dagger$	ladder operators for the jth direction [93]
$\boldsymbol{A}$	axis vector [116]
Å	angstrom unit, $1\text{Å} = 10^{-10}\,\mathrm{m} = 0.1\,\mathrm{nm}$ [114]
C	position–momentum correlation [55]
$\cos, \sin, \ldots$	trigonometric functions
$\cosh, \sinh, \ldots$	hyperbolic functions
$\boldsymbol{d}$	electric dipole moment [154]
$D_{nl}(r)$	radial density (hydrogenic atoms) [122]
e; $\mathrm{e}^x = \exp(x)$	Euler's number, $\mathrm{e} = 2.71828\ldots$; exponential function
$\mathrm{e}^{A;\,B}$	ordered exponential function [31]
e	elementary charge, $e = 4.80320 \times 10^{-10}\,\mathrm{Fr} = 1.602176634 \times 10^{-19}\,\mathrm{C}$ [113]
$\boldsymbol{e}_1$, $\boldsymbol{e}_2$, $\boldsymbol{e}_3$	cartesian unit vectors [99]
$\boldsymbol{e}_r$, $\boldsymbol{e}_\theta$, $\boldsymbol{e}_\phi$	unit vectors for spherical coordinates [109]
E; E_{kin}, E_{pot}	energy [86]; kinetic, potential energy [126]
$E_n^{(k)}$	kth-order term in the nth energy [139]
$\boldsymbol{E}$	electric field [150]
$\mathcal{E}$	energy parameter [163]
$\mathcal{E}_{n_r l}$	energy of hydrogenic atoms in Rydberg units [114]
F	force [58]
G	hermitian generator [92]
$h = 2\pi\hbar$	Planck's constant, $\hbar = 1.05457 \times 10^{-34}\,\mathrm{J\,s} = 0.658212\,\mathrm{eV\,fs}$ [2]
H; H_0, H_1	Hamilton operator [39]; its big and small parts [138]

$\mathrm{H}_n(x)$	nth Hermite polynomial [176]
i	imaginary unit, $\mathrm{i}^2 = -1$
l	oscillator length scale [72]; angular momentum quantum number [102]
$\boldsymbol{L}$, L_j	orbital angular momentum vector operator, its jth cartesian component [93]
L_+, L_-	angular momentum ladder operators [102]
$\mathrm{L}_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$	nth Laguerre polynomial of index α [119]
m	angular-momentum quantum number [93]
M	mass [41]
n	principal quantum number for hydrogenic atoms [115]
n, N; n_+, n_-	oscillator-energy quantum numbers [76,93;118]
$n_<$, $n_>$	the smaller, larger one of n_+ and n_- [118]
n_r	radial quantum number [107]
$O(\epsilon^2)$	terms of oder ϵ^2 or smaller
prob(E)	probability for event E [1]
$p(x)$	position-dependent classical momentum [156]
$P, P(t)$	momentum operator [21], with time dependence [38]
P_j; $\overline{P}_j$	momentum operator for the jth direction [89]; after rotation [90]
$\boldsymbol{P}$	momentum vector operator [97]
$\mathrm{P}_l(x)$	lth Legendre polynomial [122]
Q_n	nth projector (Brillouin, Wigner) [144]
r	radial distance, $r = \lvert\boldsymbol{r}\rvert$ [109]
$\boldsymbol{R}$	position vector operator [97]
Ry	Rydberg constant [114]
$R_{nl}(r)$	radial wave function (hydrogenic atoms) [121]
$\mathrm{sgn}(x)$	sign of x
s	radial distance in the plane [105]
t; t_0	time [37]; initial time [45]
T	elapsed time [58]
$V(x)$	potential energy [41]
w_k	weights in blending ρ [25]
x_k; y_k	cartesian coordinates ($k = 1, 2, \dots$) [3]
$X, X(t)$	position operator [20], with time dependence [37]
X_j; $\overline{X}_j$	position operator for the jth direction [89]; after rotation [90]
y	radial distance s in oscillator units [107]

$\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)$	spherical harmonics [121]
Z	atomic number [113]
Z_n	normalization factor [143]
$Z(\varphi)$	rotated position–momentum operator [56]

Greek alphabet and Greek-Latin combinations

α	polarizability [154]
δ_{jk}	Kronecker's delta symbol [4]
$\delta(x-x')$	Dirac's delta function [12]
$\delta A, (\delta A)^2$	spread, variance of A [52]
Δx, Δp	position, momentum shift [63]
ϵ, $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$	very small number, very small vector
$\epsilon(t)$	complex spreading factor [53]
$\eta(x)$	Heaviside's step function [163]
θ	polar angle [109]
$\Theta_{lm}(\theta)$	polar-angle factor in $\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)$ [122]
λ	parameter in the Hamilton operator [125]
$\lambda\!\!\!^{-}$	reduced de Broglie wavelength [159]
π	Archimedes's constant, $\pi = 3.14159\ldots$
ρ	statistical operator [23]
$\boldsymbol{\sigma}$	Pauli vector operator [104]
τ	small time increment [39]
ϕ; φ	oscillator phase [67], azimuth [105]; rotation angle [90]
$\phi(x)$	position dependent phase [157]
$\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}$	infinitesimal rotation vector [99]
$\chi_{a,b}(x)$	mesa function for the interval $a < x < b$ [24]
$\psi(x)$, $\psi_a(x)$	generic, labeled position wave function: $\psi(x) = \langle x\vert\ \rangle\,, \psi_a(x) = \langle x\vert a\rangle$ [1]
$\psi(p)$, $\psi_b(p)$	generic, labeled momentum function: $\psi(p) = \langle p\vert\ \rangle\,, \psi_b(p) = \langle p\vert b\rangle$ [2]
ω	oscillator frequency [66]

Chapter 1

Quantum Kinematics Reviewed

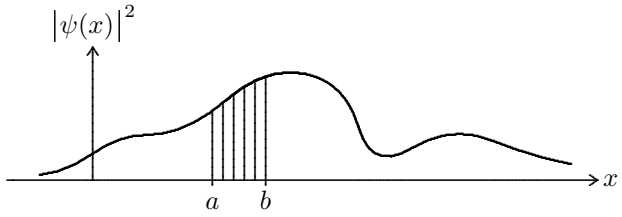
1.1 Schrödinger's wave function

A typical first course on quantum mechanics is likely to adopt the strategy of the typical textbooks for beginners and will, therefore, focus predominantly on single objects moving along the x axis. In such an approach, Schrödinger's* wave function $\psi(x)$ plays the central role in the mathematical description of the physical situation. It is taken for granted that the reader is somewhat familiar with the standard material of such a first course.

We remind ourselves of the significance of the wave function $\psi(x)$: by integrating the squared modulus of $\psi(x)$, you get probabilities. In particular, we recall that

$$\text{prob}(a < x < b) = \int_a^b \mathrm{d}x \, \big|\psi(x)\big|^2 \tag{1.1.1}$$

is the probability of finding the object between $x = a$ and $x = b$ (whereby $a < b$), which is graphically represented by



(1.1.2)

where the area is (proportional to) that probability. Therefore, the squared wave function $|\psi(x)|^2$ is a *probability density*, and one refers to the wave

*Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961)

function itself as a *probability density amplitude*. Since we shall surely find the object somewhere, we have unit probability (= 100%) in the limit of $a \to -\infty$, $b \to \infty$ so that $\psi(x)$ is normalized in accordance with

$$\text{prob}(-\infty < x < \infty) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}x \left|\psi(x)\right|^2 = 1\,. \tag{1.1.3}$$

We note that these probabilities are of a fundamental nature; they do not result from a lack of knowledge, as it would be typical for the probabilities in classical statistical physics. Also, one must remember that it is the *sole* role of $\psi(x)$ to supply the probabilistic predictions; it has no other significance beyond that. In particular, it would be wrong to think of $|\psi(x)|^2$ as a statement of how the object (electron, atom, ...) is spread out in space. Electrons, and atoms for the present matter as well, are point-like objects. You look for them, and you find them in one place and in one piece. It is only that we cannot predict with certainty the outcome of such a position measurement of an electron. What we can predict reliably are the probabilities of finding the electron in certain regions. And by repeating the measurement very often, we can verify such statistical predictions experimentally.

"Repeating the measurement" means "measure again on an equally prepared electron," it does not mean "measure again the position of the same electron." In the latter situation, the second measurement has probabilities different from the first measurement because the first measurement involves an interaction with the electron and thus a disturbance of the electron. In short, after the first position measurement, there is an altered wave function from which the probabilities for the second measurement are to be derived.

This last remark is a reminder that all probabilities are conditional probabilities. We make statistical predictions based on what we know on the conditions under which the experiment is performed. When speaking of "equally prepared electrons," we mean that the same conditions are realized. After the measurement has been carried out, the conditions are changed, and we must update our statistical predictions accordingly because the altered conditions determine the probabilities of subsequent measurements.

We recall further that, in addition to the *position wave function* $\psi(x)$, there is also a *momentum wave function* $\psi(p)$, and the two are related to each other by Fourier transformations,

$$\psi(p) = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\psi(x)\,, \qquad \psi(x) = \int \mathrm{d}p\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\psi(p)\,, \tag{1.1.4}$$

where $\hbar$ is Planck's* constant divided by 2π. We get probabilities for momentum measurements by integrating $|\psi(p)|^2$,

$$\int_q^r \mathrm{d}p\,\big|\psi(p)\big|^2 = \text{probability of finding the object's momentum in the range } q<p<r\,, \tag{1.1.5}$$

and

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}p\,\big|\psi(p)\big|^2 = 1 \tag{1.1.6}$$

is the appropriate normalization of $\psi(p)$.

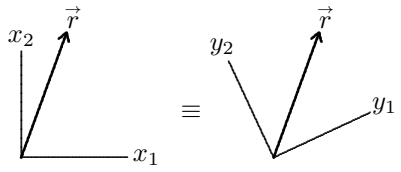
As Fourier's* taught us, the two transformations in (1.1.4) are inverses of each other so that we can go back and forth between $\psi(x)$ and $\psi(p)$. Their one-to-one correspondence tells us that either one contains all the information of the other. And it does not stop here. For example, we could keep a record of all the gaussian moments of $\psi(x)$,

$$\psi_n = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi(x)\,x^n\,\mathrm{e}^{-(x/a)^2} \tag{1.1.7}$$

with an arbitrary length parameter a, and the list of the ψ_n values, $n=0,1,2,\ldots$, would specify $\psi(x)$ uniquely. Clearly, then, the wave functions $\psi(x)$ and $\psi(p)$ and the moments ψ_n are just particular parameterizations of the given *physical state of affairs*. We are thus invited to look for a more abstract entity, a mathematical object that we shall call the *state of the system*.

1.2 Digression: Vectors, coordinates, and all that

It helps to build on an analogy that you might want to keep in mind because it will be useful for the visualization of some rather abstract quantum mechanical statements in terms of geometrical objects. We consider real n-component vectors and their numerical description in terms of coefficients (coordinates) that refer to agreed-upon cartesian† coordinate systems:



$$\vec{r} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \big(x_1\ x_2\ \cdots\ x_n\big) \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \big(y_1\ y_2\ \cdots\ y_n\big)\,. \tag{1.2.1}$$

*Max Karl Ernst Ludwig Planck (1858–1947)
*Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) †René Descartes (1596–1650)

One and the same vector has two (or more) numerical descriptions: the coordinates x_j and the coordinates y_k. These numbers, although not unrelated, can be quite different, but they mean *the same vector* $\vec{r}$. We make this explicit with the aid of the basis vectors $\vec{e}_j$ (for the x description) and $\vec{f}_k$ (for the y description),

$$\vec{r} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} x_j \vec{e}_j = \sum_{k=1}^{n} y_k \vec{f}_k \,. \tag{1.2.2}$$

We take for granted (this is a matter of convenient simplicity, not one of necessity) that the basis vectors of each set are orthonormal,

$$\vec{e}_j \cdot \vec{e}_k = \delta_{jk} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad j = k \,, \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad j \neq k \,, \end{cases}$$
$$\vec{f}_j \cdot \vec{f}_k = \delta_{jk} \,, \tag{1.2.3}$$

where δ_{jk} is Kronecker's* delta symbol. Then,

$$x_j = \vec{e}_j \cdot \vec{r} \quad \text{and} \quad y_k = \vec{f}_k \cdot \vec{r} \tag{1.2.4}$$

tell us how we determine the coordinates of $\vec{r}$ if the basis vectors are given.

More implicitly than explicitly, we have been thinking of $\vec{r}$, $\vec{e}_j$, $\vec{f}_k$ as being numerically represented by *rows* of coordinates. So, let us regard the vectors themselves as *row-type vectors*. But just as well we could have arranged the coordinates in columns and would then regard the vectors themselves as *column-type vectors*. It is expedient to emphasize the row or column nature by the notation. We continue to write $\vec{r}, \vec{e}_j, \vec{f}_k$ for the row vectors and denote the corresponding column vectors by $r^{\downarrow}$, $e_j^{\downarrow}$, $f_k^{\downarrow}$. Thus,

$$\vec{r} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{pmatrix} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.2.5}$$

is paired with

$$r^{\downarrow} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.2.6}$$

and the two kinds of vectors are related to each other by *transposition*,

$$r^{\downarrow} = \vec{r}^{\,\mathrm{T}} \,, \quad \vec{r} = r^{\downarrow\mathrm{T}} \,. \tag{1.2.7}$$

*Leopold KRONECKER (1823–1891)

One immediate benefit of distinguishing between row vectors and column vectors is that we can write inner (scalar, dot) products as simple column-times-row products. This is illustrated by the inner product for

$$\vec{r} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{s} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} u_1 & u_2 & \cdots & u_n \end{pmatrix}, \tag{1.2.8}$$

for which we use the standard dot notation,

$$\big(\vec{r}, \vec{s}\big) = \vec{r} \cdot \vec{s} = \sum_j x_j u_j = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathrel{\widehat{=}} \vec{r}} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathrel{\widehat{=}} s^{\downarrow}} = \vec{r}\, s^{\downarrow}. \tag{1.2.9}$$

In view of the symmetry $\vec{r} \cdot \vec{s} = \vec{s} \cdot \vec{r}$, we thus have

$$\underbrace{\vec{r} \cdot \vec{s}}_{\substack{\text{inner product of} \\ \text{two row vectors}}} = \underbrace{\vec{r}\, s^{\downarrow} = \vec{s}\, r^{\downarrow}}_{\substack{\text{products of} \\ \text{the type} \\ \text{“row times} \\ \text{column”}}} = \underbrace{r^{\downarrow} \cdot s^{\downarrow}}_{\substack{\text{inner product of two} \\ \text{column vectors}}}. \tag{1.2.10}$$

The central identity here is, of course, consistent with the product rule for transposition, $(AB)^{\mathrm{T}} = B^{\mathrm{T}} A^{\mathrm{T}}$, for which we have

$$(\vec{r}\, s^{\downarrow})^{\mathrm{T}} = s^{\downarrow \mathrm{T}} \vec{r}^{\,\mathrm{T}} = \vec{s}\, r^{\downarrow} \tag{1.2.11}$$

here. Upon combining

$$\vec{r} = \sum_j x_j \vec{e}_j \quad \text{and} \quad x_j = \vec{e}_j \cdot \vec{r} = \vec{r}\, e_j^{\downarrow} \tag{1.2.12}$$

into

$$\vec{r} = \sum_j \vec{r}\, e_j^{\downarrow} \vec{e}_j = \vec{r} \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow} \vec{e}_j, \tag{1.2.13}$$

we meet an object of a new kind, the sum of products $e_j^{\downarrow} \vec{e}_j$ of “column times row” type. That is not a number but a *dyadic*, which would have a

$n \times n$ matrix as its numerical representation. See, for example,

$$r^{\downarrow}\vec{s} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u_1 & \cdots & u_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1u_1 & x_1u_2 & \cdots & x_1u_n \\ x_2u_1 & x_2u_2 & \cdots & x_2u_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_nu_1 & x_nu_2 & \cdots & x_nu_n \end{pmatrix}. \tag{1.2.14}$$

The particular dyadic that appears in (1.2.13) has the property that when it multiplies (on the left) the arbitrary vector $\vec{r}$, the outcome is this vector itself: it is the *unit dyadic*,

$$\vec{r}\,\overleftrightarrow{1} = \vec{r} \quad \text{with} \quad \overleftrightarrow{1} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j\,. \tag{1.2.15}$$

The notation $\overleftrightarrow{\ }$ reminds us that such a dyadic is like a column vector on the left and like a row vector on the right.

The identification of the unit dyadic is consistent only if it also acts accordingly on the right. Indeed, it does,

$$\overleftrightarrow{1}\,r^{\downarrow} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j r^{\downarrow} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j \cdot \vec{r} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}x_j = r^{\downarrow}\,. \tag{1.2.16}$$

As this little calculation demonstrates, the statement

$$\sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j = \overleftrightarrow{1} \tag{1.2.17}$$

expresses the *completeness* of the set of column vectors $e_j^{\downarrow}$ and also that of the set of row vectors $\vec{e}_j$ because we can expand any arbitrary vector $r^{\downarrow}$ as a linear combination of the $e_j^{\downarrow}$s.

The statements of *orthonormality*,

$$\vec{e}_j e_k^{\downarrow} = \delta_{jk}\,, \tag{1.2.18}$$

and of completeness in (1.2.17) are two sides of the same coin. And, of course, there is nothing special here about the $\vec{e}_j$ set of vectors, and the $\vec{f}_k$ basis vectors are also orthonormal,

$$\vec{f}_j f_k^{\downarrow} = \delta_{jk} \tag{1.2.19}$$

and complete,

$$\sum_k f_k^{\downarrow}\vec{f}_k = \overleftrightarrow{1}\,. \tag{1.2.20}$$

In

$$r^{\downarrow} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow} x_j = \sum_k f_k^{\downarrow} y_k \,, \tag{1.2.21}$$

we have two parameterizations of $r^{\downarrow}$. How does one express one set of coefficients in terms of the other? That is, how does one translate the x description into the y description and *vice versa*? That is easy! See,

$$\begin{aligned} x_j = \vec{e}_j r^{\downarrow} &= \vec{e}_j \sum_k f_k^{\downarrow} y_k \\ &= \sum_k \vec{e}_j f_k^{\downarrow} y_k = \sum_k (ef)_{jk} y_k \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.22}$$

with

$$(ef)_{jk} = \vec{e}_j f_k^{\downarrow} = \vec{e}_j \cdot \vec{f}_k \,, \tag{1.2.23}$$

and likewise,

$$y_k = \sum_j (fe)_{kj} x_j \quad \text{with} \quad (fe)_{kj} = \vec{f}_k \cdot \vec{e}_j \,. \tag{1.2.24}$$

The two $n \times n$ transformation matrices composed of the matrix elements $(ef)_{jk}$ and $(fe)_{kj}$ are clearly transposes of each other. Furthermore, it follows from

$$\begin{aligned} x_j = \sum_k (ef)_{jk} y_k &= \sum_k (ef)_{jk} \sum_{j'} (fe)_{kj'} x_{j'} \\ &= \sum_{j'} \left(\sum_k (ef)_{jk} (fe)_{kj'} \right) x_{j'} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.25}$$

that

$$\sum_k (ef)_{jk} (fe)_{kj'} = \delta_{jj'} \tag{1.2.26}$$

must hold. This is to say that the two transformation matrices are inverses of each other — hardly a surprise; note Exercises 3 and 4.

Rather than converting one description into the other, we can ask how the two sets of basis vectors are related to each other. Since both sets are orthonormal and complete, the mapping

$$e_j^{\downarrow} \longrightarrow f_j^{\downarrow} = \overleftrightarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow} \tag{1.2.27}$$

is a *rotation* in the n-dimensional space. Geometric intuition tells us that there must be a unique dyadic $\overleftarrow{O}$ that accomplishes this rotation. We find it by multiplying with $\vec{e}_j$ from the right

$$f_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j = \overleftarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j\,, \tag{1.2.28}$$

followed by summing over j and exploiting the completeness of the $\vec{e}$ vectors,

$$\sum_j f_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j = \sum_j \overleftarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j = \overleftarrow{O}\underbrace{\sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j}_{=\overleftarrow{1}}\,, \tag{1.2.29}$$

with the outcome

$$\overleftarrow{O} = \sum_j f_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j\,. \tag{1.2.30}$$

As an exercise, we verify that it has the desired property:

$$\overleftarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow} = \sum_k f_k^{\downarrow}\underbrace{\vec{e}_k e_j^{\downarrow}}_{=\delta_{kj}} = \sum_k f_k^{\downarrow}\delta_{kj} = f_j^{\downarrow}\,, \tag{1.2.31}$$

indeed. Further, we note that

$$\vec{f}_k\overleftarrow{O} = \sum_j \underbrace{\vec{f}_k f_j^{\downarrow}}_{=\delta_{kj}}\vec{e}_j = \sum_j \delta_{kj}\vec{e}_j = \vec{e}_k \tag{1.2.32}$$

so that the same dyadic $\overleftarrow{O}$ also transforms the rows $\vec{f}_k$ into the $\vec{e}_k$s. Together with the transposed statements, we thus have

$$\begin{aligned} f_j^{\downarrow} &= \overleftarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow}\,, & \vec{f}_k\overleftarrow{O} &= \vec{e}_k\,,\\ \vec{f}_j &= \vec{e}_j\overleftarrow{O}^{\,\mathrm{T}}\,, & \overleftarrow{O}^{\,\mathrm{T}} f_k^{\downarrow} &= e_k^{\downarrow} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.33}$$

with

$$\overleftarrow{O} = \sum_k f_k^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_k \quad\text{and}\quad \overleftarrow{O}^{\,\mathrm{T}} = \sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{f}_j\,. \tag{1.2.34}$$

Here, too, we can iterate the transformations, as in

$$f_j^{\downarrow} = \overleftarrow{O}\, e_j^{\downarrow} = \overleftarrow{O}\overleftarrow{O}^{\,\mathrm{T}} f_j^{\downarrow} \quad\text{or}\quad \vec{e}_k = \vec{f}_k\overleftarrow{O} = \vec{e}_k\overleftarrow{O}^{\,\mathrm{T}}\overleftarrow{O} \tag{1.2.35}$$

and conclude that

$$\overleftarrow{O}\,\overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}} = \overleftarrow{1} = \overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}}\overleftarrow{O}\,. \tag{1.2.36}$$

Dyadics with this property, namely the transpose is the inverse,

$$\overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}} = \overrightarrow{O}^{-1}, \tag{1.2.37}$$

are called *orthogonal*, in analogy to the corresponding terminology for orthogonal matrices in linear algebra.

Actually, in linear algebra, the most basic definition of an orthogonal transformation is that it leaves *all* inner products unchanged. That is, for any pair of vectors $\vec{r}, \vec{s}$, we should have

$$\left(\vec{r}\,\overleftarrow{O}\right) \cdot \left(\vec{s}\,\overleftarrow{O}\right) = \vec{r} \cdot \vec{s}\,, \tag{1.2.38}$$

and for any pair $r^{\downarrow}, s^{\downarrow}$, we should have

$$\left(\overleftarrow{O}\,r^{\downarrow}\right) \cdot \left(\overleftarrow{O}\,s^{\downarrow}\right) = r^{\downarrow} \cdot s^{\downarrow}\,. \tag{1.2.39}$$

Indeed, upon switching over to row-times-column products, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{r}\,s^{\downarrow} &= \vec{r}\,\overleftarrow{O}\,\overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}}\,s^{\downarrow} \quad \text{from (1.2.38)} \\ \text{and} \quad \vec{r}\,s^{\downarrow} &= \vec{r}\,\overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}}\overleftarrow{O}\,s^{\downarrow} \quad \text{from (1.2.39),} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.40}$$

and $\overleftarrow{O}\,\overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}} = \overleftarrow{1} = \overrightarrow{O}^{\mathrm{T}}\overleftarrow{O}$ are implied again.

1.3 Dirac's kets and bras

We now return to the discussion of $\psi(x), \psi(p), \ldots$ as equivalent numerical descriptions of the same abstract entity, the state of affairs of the physical system under consideration. Following Dirac,* we symbolize the state by a so-called *ket*, for which we write $|\ \rangle$ if we mean just any state (as we do presently) and fill the gap with appropriate labels if we mean one of a specific set of states, such as $|1\rangle$, $|2\rangle$, $|3\rangle$, ... or $|\alpha\rangle$, $|\beta\rangle$, ..., whatever the convenient and fitting labels may be. Mathematically speaking, kets are vectors, elements of a complex vector space, which just says that we can add kets to get new ones, and we can multiply them with complex numbers to get other, related kets. More generally, any linear combination of kets is another ket.

*Paul Adrien Maurice Dirac (1902–1984)

It helps to think of kets as analogs of column-type vectors, and then

$$|\,\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle\psi(x) = \int \mathrm{d}p\, |p\rangle\psi(p) \tag{1.3.1}$$

are analogs to the two decompositions of $r^{\downarrow}$ in (1.2.21). There are crucial differences, however. Then we were summing over discrete indices; now we are integrating over the continuous variables x and p that label the kets. Then we were dealing with real objects — the coordinates x_j and y_k are real numbers — now we have complex-valued wave functions, $\psi(x)$ and $\psi(p)$. But otherwise, the analogy is rather close and well worth remembering.

A wave function $\psi(x)$ that is large only in a small x region describes an object that is very well localized in the sense that we can reliably predict that we shall find it in this small region. In the limit of ever smaller regions — eventually a single x value, a point — we would get $|\,\rangle \to |x\rangle$ in some sense and, therefore, $|x\rangle$ refers to the situation "object is at x, exactly." This, however, is no longer a real physical situation but rather the overidealized situation of that unphysical limit. As a consequence, the ket $|x\rangle$ is not actually associated with a physically realizable state; it is a convenient mathematical fiction. The unphysical nature is perhaps most obvious when we recall that the perfect localization of the overidealized limit would require a control on the quantum object with infinite precision, which is never available in an actual real-life experiment.

By the same token, ket $|p\rangle$ refers to the overidealized situation of infinitely sharp momentum, again a mathematical fiction, not a physical reality. Both $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$ kets are extremely useful mathematical objects, but one must keep in mind that a physical ket $|\,\rangle$ *always* involves a range of x values and a range of p values. This range may be small, then we have a well-controlled position, or a well-controlled momentum, but it is invariably a finite range.

Kets $|\,\rangle$, $|x\rangle$, $|p\rangle$, ... are analogs of column-type vectors. They have their partners in the so-called *bras* $\langle\,|$, $\langle x|$, $\langle p|$, ..., which are analogs of row-type vectors. When dealing with the real vectors $r^{\downarrow}$, $\vec{r}$, we related the two kinds to each other by transposition, $r^{\downarrow} = \vec{r}^{\,\mathrm{T}}$. Now, however, the "coordinates" — that is, the wave functions $\psi(x)$, $\psi(p)$ — are complex-valued. Therefore, mathematical consistency requires that we supplement transposition with complex conjugation and thus have *hermitian** *conjugation*, or, as the physicists say, we "take the adjoint,"

$$|\,\rangle^{\dagger} = \langle\,|\,, \qquad \langle\,|^{\dagger} = |\,\rangle\,. \tag{1.3.2}$$

*Charles HERMITE (1822–1901)

The built-in complex conjugation becomes visible as soon as we take the adjoint of a linear combination,

$$\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\alpha + \big|2\big\rangle\beta\Big)^\dagger = \alpha^*\big\langle 1\big| + \beta^*\big\langle 2\big|\,,$$
$$\Big(\gamma\big\langle 3\big| + \delta\big\langle 4\big|\Big)^\dagger = \big|3\big\rangle\gamma^* + \big|4\big\rangle\delta^*\,. \tag{1.3.3}$$

In particular, the adjoint statements to the decompositions of $|\ \rangle$ in (1.3.1) are

$$\big\langle\ \big| = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi(x)^*\big\langle x\big| = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\psi(p)^*\big\langle p\big|\,. \tag{1.3.4}$$

In further analogy with the column-type vectors of Section 1.2, the kets are also endowed with an inner product so that the vector space of kets is an inner-product space or Hilbert* space. The notation $|1\rangle \cdot |2\rangle$ of the inner product as a "dot product" is, however, not used at all. In the mathematical literature, inner products are commonly written as $(\ ,\ )$ so that the inner product of two kets would appear as $\big(|1\rangle, |2\rangle\big)$ — except that mathematicians are not fond of the ket and bra notations, Dirac's stroke of genius.

Instead, one follows the suggestion of (1.2.10) and understands the inner products of two kets, or two bras, as the analogs of row-times-column products. So, the inner product of the ket

$$\big|1\big\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|x\big\rangle\psi_1(x) \tag{1.3.5}$$

with the ket

$$\big|2\big\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|x\big\rangle\psi_2(x) \tag{1.3.6}$$

is obtained by multiplying the bra

$$\big\langle 1\big| = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi_1(x)^*\big\langle x\big| \tag{1.3.7}$$

with the ket $|2\rangle$,

$$\Big(\big|1\big\rangle, \big|2\big\rangle\Big) = \big\langle 1\big|2\big\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi_1(x)^*\big\langle x\big| \int \mathrm{d}x'\,\big|x'\big\rangle\psi_2(x')$$
$$= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi_1(x)^* \int \mathrm{d}x'\,\big\langle x\big|x'\big\rangle\psi_2(x')\,, \tag{1.3.8}$$

*David Hilbert (1862–1943)

where the integration variable of (1.3.6) is changed to x' to avoid confusion. This is also the inner product of bras $\langle 1|$ and $\langle 2|$,

$$\Big(\big\langle 1\big|, \big\langle 2\big|\Big) = \big\langle 1\big|2\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.3.9}$$

As anticipated in (1.3.8) and repeated in (1.3.9), we write only one vertical line in the bra-ket product $\langle 1|\,|2\rangle = \langle 1|2\rangle$ of bra $\langle 1|$ and ket $|2\rangle$ and speak of a Dirac bracket or simply *bracket*.

In accordance with what the reader learned in whichever first course on quantum mechanics, we expect the inner product (1.3.8) to be given by

$$\big\langle 1\big|2\big\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\; \psi_1(x)^*\psi_2(x) \tag{1.3.10}$$

so that we need $\langle x|x'\rangle$ in (1.3.8) such that

$$\int \mathrm{d}x' \,\big\langle x\big|x'\big\rangle\psi_2(x') = \psi_2(x) \tag{1.3.11}$$

for all $\psi_2(x)$. Thus, we infer

$$\big\langle x\big|x'\big\rangle = \delta(x-x') \tag{1.3.12}$$

which is to say that x kets and bras are pairwise orthogonal and normalized to the Dirac delta function. There is a longer discussion of the delta function in Section 4.1 of *Basic Matters*, and so we are content here with recalling the basic, defining property, namely

$$\int \mathrm{d}x' \,\delta(x-x')f(x') = f(x) \tag{1.3.13}$$

for all the functions that are continuous near x.

The normalization (1.1.3) of the wave function in (1.1.3) now reads

$$\big\langle\ \big|\ \big\rangle = 1\,, \tag{1.3.14}$$

see

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle\ \big|\ \big\rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi(x)^*\big\langle x\big|\int \mathrm{d}x'\,\big|x'\big\rangle\psi(x')\\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi(x)^*\underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x'\,\underbrace{\big\langle x\big|x'\big\rangle}_{=\delta(x-x')}\psi(x')}_{=\psi(x)} = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 = 1\,.\end{aligned} \tag{1.3.15}$$

In other words, the physical kets $|\ \rangle$, and the physical bras $\langle\ |$, are of *unit length*.

We recall also the physical significance of the bracket $\langle 1|2\rangle$ in (1.3.10), after which it is named *probability amplitude*: Its squared modulus $\big|\langle 1|2\rangle\big|^2$ is the probability $\mathrm{prob}(1 \leftarrow 2)$ of finding the system in state 1, described by ket $|1\rangle$ and parameterized by the wave function $\psi_1(x)$, if the system is known to be in state 2, with ket $|2\rangle$ and wave function $\psi_2(x)$. We should not fail to note the symmetry possessed by $\mathrm{prob}(t \leftarrow 2)$,

$$\mathrm{prob}(1 \leftarrow 2) = \Big|\big\langle 1\big|2\big\rangle\Big|^2 = \mathrm{prob}(2 \leftarrow 1)\,, \tag{1.3.16}$$

which is an immediate consequence of

$$\big\langle 1\big|2\big\rangle = \big\langle 2\big|1\big\rangle^*\,, \tag{1.3.17}$$

demonstrated by interchanging the labels, $1 \leftrightarrow 2$, in (1.3.10). The fundamental symmetry (1.3.16) is quite remarkable because it states that the probability of finding $|1\rangle$ when $|2\rangle$ is the case is always exactly equal to the probability of finding $|2\rangle$ when $|1\rangle$ is the case, although these probabilities can refer to two very different experimental situations.

There is a basic requirement of consistency in this context, namely that $\mathrm{prob}(1 \leftarrow 2) \leq 1$. Indeed, this is ensured by the well-known *Cauchy** *–Bunyakovsky*† *–Schwarz*‡ *inequality.* This inequality is the subject matter of Exercise 6.

The orthonormality statement (1.3.12),

$$\big\langle x\big|x'\big\rangle = \delta(x - x')\,, \tag{1.3.18}$$

is the obvious analog of (1.2.18),

$$\vec{e}_j e_k^{\downarrow} = \delta_{jk}\,. \tag{1.3.19}$$

We expect that the analog of the completeness relation (1.2.17),

$$\sum_j e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j = {}^{\overleftarrow{\rightarrow}}1\,, \tag{1.3.20}$$

reads

$$\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x| = 1\,. \tag{1.3.21}$$

Strictly speaking, the symbol on the right is the identity operator — the operator analog of the unit dyadic ${}^{\overleftarrow{\rightarrow}}1$ — but we will not be pedantic about

*Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857)
†Viktor Yakovlevich Bunyakovsky (1804–1889) ‡Hermann Schwarz (1843–1921)

it and write it just like the number 1. It will always be unambiguously clear from the context whether we mean the unit operator or the unit number. Likewise, the symbol 5, say, can mean the number 5 or 5 times the unit operator, depending on the context. For instance, in $5\langle x| = \langle x|5$, we have the number 5 on the left and 5 times the unit operator on the right. There will be no confusion arising from this convenience in notation.

But we must not forget to verify the *completeness relation* (1.3.21). "Verification" means here just the check that it is consistent with everything else we have so far. For example, is it true that $1|\,\rangle = |\,\rangle$? Yes, it is as

$$\begin{aligned} 1|\,\rangle &= \underbrace{\Big(\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x|\Big)}_{=1}\underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x'\,|x'\rangle\psi(x')}_{=|\,\rangle} \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle \int \mathrm{d}x'\,\underbrace{\langle x|x'\rangle}_{=\delta(x-x')}\psi(x') \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\psi(x) = |\,\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.22}$$

confirms. Similarly, we check that $\langle\,|1 = \langle\,|$. Yet another little calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle 1|2\rangle &= \langle 1|1|2\rangle \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi_1(x)^*\langle x| \int \mathrm{d}x'\,|x'\rangle\langle x'| \int \mathrm{d}x''\,|x''\rangle\psi_2(x'') \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\psi_1(x)^* \underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x'\,\underbrace{\langle x|x'\rangle}_{\delta(x-x')=}\int \mathrm{d}x''\,\underbrace{\langle x'|x''\rangle}_{=\delta(x'-x'')}\psi_2(x'')}_{=\psi_2(x')} \\ &\qquad\qquad\qquad

In summary, we have for the position states

$$\begin{aligned} \text{adjoint relations:} \quad & |x\rangle = \langle x|^\dagger\,, \quad \langle x| = |x\rangle^\dagger\,, \\ \text{orthonormality:} \quad & \langle x|x'\rangle = \delta(x-x')\,, \\ \text{completeness:} \quad & \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle\langle x| = 1\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.25}$$

And, by the same token, the corresponding statements hold for the momentum states,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{adjoint relations:} \quad & |p\rangle = \langle p|^\dagger\,, \quad \langle p| = |p\rangle^\dagger\,, \\ \text{orthonormality:} \quad & \langle p|p'\rangle = \delta(p-p')\,, \\ \text{completeness:} \quad & \int \mathrm{d}p\, |p\rangle\langle p| = 1\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.26}$$

because we can repeat the whole line of reasoning with labels x consistently replaced by labels p. Accordingly, the set of position kets $|x\rangle$ is a basis for the ket space and so is the set of momentum kets $|p\rangle$; likewise, the sets of position bras $\langle x|$ or momentum bras $\langle p|$ are two bases for the bra space.

1.4 *xp* transformation function

Since the two integrals in (1.3.1) are different parameterization for the same ket $|\ \rangle$, there must be well-defined relations between the wave functions $\psi(x)$ and $\psi(p)$ and also between the kets $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$. For the wave functions, the relations are the Fourier transformations of (1.1.4). We use them now to establish the corresponding statements that relate $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$ to each other.

First, note what is already implicit in (1.3.22), namely that

$$\langle x|\ \rangle = \langle x| \int \mathrm{d}x'\, |x'\rangle\psi(x') = \int \mathrm{d}x'\, \underbrace{\langle x|x'\rangle}_{=\delta(x-x')}\psi(x') = \psi(x) \tag{1.4.1}$$

or

$$\psi(x) = \langle x|\ \rangle \tag{1.4.2}$$

and (infer by analogy or repeat the argument)

$$\psi(p) = \langle p|\ \rangle\,. \tag{1.4.3}$$

Therefore, we have

$$\langle x|\ \rangle = \psi(x) = \int \mathrm{d}p\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \psi(p) = \int \mathrm{d}p\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \langle p|\ \rangle\,, \tag{1.4.4}$$

and this must be true irrespective of the ket $|\ \rangle$ we are considering so that

$$\langle x| = \int \mathrm{d}p\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \langle p| \tag{1.4.5}$$

follows. The adjoint statement reads

$$|x\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}p\, |p\rangle \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,. \tag{1.4.6}$$

The inverse relations follow from

$$\langle p|\ \rangle = \psi(p) = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \psi(x) = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \langle x|\ \rangle\,, \tag{1.4.7}$$

which implies

$$\langle p| = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \langle x| \tag{1.4.8}$$

and

$$|p\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,. \tag{1.4.9}$$

They are, of course, all variants of each other. The most basic statement, so far implicit, is that about $\langle x|p\rangle$, the *xp transformation function*:

$$\langle x|p\rangle = \underbrace{\langle x| \int \mathrm{d}x'\, |x'\rangle}_{= \int \mathrm{d}x'\, \delta(x-x')} \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,, \tag{1.4.10}$$

that is,

$$\langle x|p\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,, \tag{1.4.11}$$

which is the fundamental phase factor of Fourier transformation. It is worth memorizing this expression, as everything else follows from it, sometimes

by using the adjoint relation

$$\langle p|x\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,. \tag{1.4.12}$$

Again, we have the choice of repeating the argument, or we recognize it as a special case of the general statement in (1.3.17).

As an illustration of the fundamental role of $\langle x|p\rangle$, we consider

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(x) = \langle x|\ \rangle = \langle x|1|\ \rangle = \langle x|\left(\int \mathrm{d}p\,|p\rangle\langle p|\right)|\ \rangle \\ = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\langle x|p\rangle\langle p|\ \rangle = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\psi(p)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.13}$$

which takes us back to (1.1.4). Another application is

$$\begin{aligned}\delta(x-x') = \langle x|x'\rangle = \langle x|1|x'\rangle = \langle x|\left(\int \mathrm{d}p\,|p\rangle\langle p|\right)|x'\rangle \\ = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\langle x|p\rangle\langle p|x'\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px'/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \\ = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(x\,-\,x')p/\hbar}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.14}$$

which is the basic Fourier representation of the Dirac delta function. It appears in many forms, all of which are variants of

$$\int \mathrm{d}k\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kx} = 2\pi\delta(x)\,. \tag{1.4.15}$$

This, too, is an identity that is worth remembering.

The formulation of the position–momentum analog of the orthogonal transformation (1.2.27) requires some care because $|x\rangle \to |p\rangle$ is a mapping between objects of different metrical dimensions. Relations such as (1.3.10) or (1.1.3) tell us that the position wave function $\psi(x) = \langle x|\ \rangle$ has the metrical dimension of the reciprocal square root of a distance ($1/\sqrt{\mathrm{cm}}$, say), and likewise the momentum wave function $\psi(p) = \langle p|\ \rangle$ has the metrical dimension of the reciprocal square root of a momentum ($1/\sqrt{\mathrm{g\,cm/s}}$, for instance). And since the state ket $|\ \rangle$ is dimensionless, see (1.3.14), the bras $\langle x|$ and $\langle p|$ have these metrical dimensions as well and so do the kets $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$.

Therefore, it is expedient to work with dimensionless quantities, for which purpose we introduce an arbitrary length scale a. Then, the analog

of (1.2.27) reads

$$\big|x\big\rangle\sqrt{a} \to \big|p\big\rangle\sqrt{\hbar/a} = U\big|x\big\rangle\sqrt{a} \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{x}{a} = \frac{p}{\hbar/a}\,, \tag{1.4.16}$$

where we note that $\hbar/a$ is the corresponding momentum scale because Planck's constant has the metrical dimension of length $\times$ momentum. The operator U thus defined is given by

$$\begin{aligned} U = U1 = U\int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|x\big\rangle\big\langle x\big| &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,U\big|x\big\rangle\big\langle x\big| \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|p = x\hbar/a^2\big\rangle\sqrt{\hbar/a^2}\big\langle x\big| \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.17}$$

or, after substituting $x = ta$,

$$U = \int \mathrm{d}t\,\big|p = t\hbar/a\big\rangle\sqrt{\hbar}\,\big\langle x = ta\big|\,. \tag{1.4.18}$$

The hermitian conjugation of (1.3.2) has the same product rule as transposition, see (1.2.11),

$$(AB)^\dagger = B^\dagger A^\dagger\,, \tag{1.4.19}$$

because the complex conjugation that distinguishes the two operations has no effect on the order of multiplication. As a particular case, we have $\big(|p\rangle\langle x|\big)^\dagger = |x\rangle\langle p|$ so that

$$U^\dagger = \int \mathrm{d}t\,\big|x = ta\big\rangle\sqrt{\hbar}\,\big\langle p = t\hbar/a\big| \tag{1.4.20}$$

is the adjoint of U. In analogy with the orthogonality statement (1.2.36), we expect

$$UU^\dagger = 1 = U^\dagger U \tag{1.4.21}$$

to hold. Let us verify the left identity,

$$\begin{aligned} UU^\dagger &= \int \mathrm{d}t\,\big|p = t\hbar/a\big\rangle\sqrt{\hbar}\underbrace{\big\langle x = ta\big|\int \mathrm{d}t'\,\big|x = t'a\big\rangle}_{=\int \mathrm{d}t'\,\delta(ta - t'a)}\sqrt{\hbar}\,\big\langle p = t'\hbar/a\big| \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}t\,\big|p = t\hbar/a\big\rangle\hbar\underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}t'\,\delta(ta - t'a)\big\langle p = t'\hbar/a\big|}_{=(1/a)\langle p = t\hbar/a|} = \int \mathrm{d}p\,\big|p\big\rangle\big\langle p\big| = 1\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.22}$$

It is correct indeed, and the right identity in (1.4.21) is demonstrated the same way. At an intermediate step, the identity

$$\delta(ta - t'a) = \frac{1}{a}\delta(t - t') \qquad (a > 0) \tag{1.4.23}$$

is used, which is a special case of (5.1.110) in *Basic Matters*.

Operators with the property (1.4.21), that is, their adjoint is their inverse, are called *unitary operators*. They transform sets of kets or bras into equivalent sets — much like a rotation turns sets of vectors of column or row type into equivalent ones — and play a very important role in quantum mechanics.

1.5 Position and momentum operators, and functions of them

We look for the object (electron, atom, ...) and find it at position x, with the probability of finding it inside a small vicinity around x given by $\mathrm{d}x\,|\psi(x)|^2$. This is then the probability distribution associated with the (random) variable x. Accordingly, the mean value of x is calculated as

$$\overline{x} = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 x\,, \tag{1.5.1}$$

and the mean value of x^2 as

$$\overline{x^2} = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 x^2\,. \tag{1.5.2}$$

More generally, we have

$$\overline{x^n} = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 x^n \tag{1.5.3}$$

for an arbitrary power and

$$\overline{f(x)} = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 f(x) \tag{1.5.4}$$

for the mean value of an arbitrary function of the position variable x.

Recalling that $|\psi(x)|^2 = \psi(x)^*\psi(x) = \langle\, |x\rangle\langle x|\,\rangle$, we rewrite these expressions as

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{x} &= \langle\, \Big|\Big(\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle x\langle x|\Big)\Big|\,\rangle\,, \\ \overline{x^2} &= \langle\, \Big|\Big(\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle x^2\langle x|\Big)\Big|\,\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.5.5}$$

and so forth as well as

$$\overline{f(x)} = \langle\, | \left(\int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle f(x) \langle x| \right) | \,\rangle\,, \tag{1.5.6}$$

thereby isolating the specific state of the system — bra on the left, ket on the right — from the quantity that we are taking the average of,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{x} &\longrightarrow \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x \langle x| = X\,, \\ \overline{x^2} &\longrightarrow \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x^2 \langle x| = X^2\,, \\ &\vdots \\ \overline{f(x)} &\longrightarrow \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle f(x) \langle x| = f(X)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.5.7}$$

The first line introduces the *position operator* X as the integral of $|x\rangle x\langle x|$ and the second line introduces X^2, the square of X, as we can verify,

$$\begin{aligned} XX &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x \langle x| \int \mathrm{d}x'\, |x'\rangle x' \langle x'| \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x \underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x'\, \underbrace{\langle x|x'\rangle}_{=\delta(x-x')}\, x' \langle x'|}_{=x\langle x|} \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x^2 \langle x| = X^2, \quad \text{indeed}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.5.8}$$

And so forth, we have

$$X^n = \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle x^n \langle x| \tag{1.5.9}$$

for the powers of X. Then by linear combinations,

$$f(X) = \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle f(x) \langle x| \tag{1.5.10}$$

for all polynomial functions of x and, by approximation, finally for all reasonable functions of x. "Reasonable" means here that the numbers $f(x)$ have to be well-defined function values for all real numbers x. Once we have gone through this argument, we can just accept (1.5.10) as the definition of a function of position operator X. The integral on the right-hand side

of (1.5.10) is an example for the *spectral decomposition* of an operator, here of $f(X)$. Note Exercises 8 and 9.

Likewise, we have the *momentum operator* P,

$$P = \int \mathrm{d}p \, |p\rangle p \langle p| \,, \tag{1.5.11}$$

and can rely on the spectral decomposition

$$g(P) = \int \mathrm{d}p \, |p\rangle g(p) \langle p| \tag{1.5.12}$$

for all functions of P that derive from reasonable numerical functions $g(p)$. Once again, the reasoning is completely analogous and we need not repeat it.

Now, with the operator functions of X and P at hand, we return to (1.5.5) and note that

$$\overline{x} = \underbrace{\langle\, |X| \,\rangle}_{\text{the position operator } X \text{ sandwiched between the state bra } \langle\ |\ \text{and the state ket } |\ \rangle} = \underbrace{\langle X \rangle}_{\text{the "expectation value" of the position operator } X}$$

the average of the numbers x

(1.5.13)

which introduces a new notation, $\langle X \rangle$, that emphasizes the role played by the position operator X. One speaks of the "expectation value," a historical terminology that is, as so often, not fully logically but completely standard.

Similarly, we write $\langle f(X) \rangle$ for the expectation value of the operator-function $f(X)$ and $\langle P \rangle$, $\langle P^2 \rangle$, ..., $\langle g(P) \rangle$, for the expectation values of P, P^2, ..., $g(P)$. We have introduced the latter, by analogy, in terms of integrals involving the momentum wave function $\psi(p)$, but we can, of course, also refer to the position wave function $\psi(x)$; see Exercise 12.

1.6 Traces and statistical operators

Given a ket $|1\rangle$ and a bra $\langle 2|$, we can multiply them in either order, thereby getting

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{the bracket } \langle 2|1 \rangle \,, \text{ a number,} \\ &\text{or the ket-bra } |1\rangle\langle 2| \,, \text{ an operator.} \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.1}$$

In the bracket $\langle 2|1\rangle$, the ingredients are no longer identifiable because very many pairs of a bra and a ket have the same number for the bracket. By contrast, given the ket-bra $|1\rangle\langle 2|$, one can identify the ingredient almost uniquely. Therefore, we cannot expect that there could be a mapping from the bracket to the ket-bra, but there is a mapping from the ket-bra to the bracket,

$$\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big| \to \big\langle 2\big|1\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.6.2}$$

It is called "taking the trace" and we write tr( ) for it,

$$\mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) = \big\langle 2\big|1\big\rangle\,; \tag{1.6.3}$$

read: the trace of $|1\rangle\langle 2|$ is $\langle 2|1\rangle$.

Before proceeding, let us look at the analog for column and row vectors:

$$r^{\downarrow}\vec{s} \to \vec{s}\,r^{\downarrow} = \vec{s}\cdot\vec{r} \tag{1.6.4}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}\big(\,u_1\;u_2\cdots\;u_n\,\big) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1u_1 & x_1u_2 & \cdots & x_1u_n \\ x_2u_1 & x_2u_2 & \cdots & x_2u_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_nu_1 & x_nu_2 & \cdots & x_nu_n \end{pmatrix}$$
$$\to x_1u_1 + x_2u_2 + \cdots + x_nu_n\,, \tag{1.6.5}$$

the diagonal sum of the matrix for $r^{\downarrow}\vec{s}$. Clearly, if you only know the value of this sum, you cannot reconstruct the whole matrix, but given the matrix, you easily figure out the diagonal sum.

The linear structure for kets and bras is inherited by the trace. For example, consider

$$\big|1\big\rangle = \big|1_a\big\rangle\alpha + \big|1_b\big\rangle\beta \tag{1.6.6}$$

and compare the two ways of evaluating $\mathrm{tr}\big(|1\rangle\langle 2|\big)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) &= \big\langle 2\big|1\big\rangle = \big\langle 2\big|1_a\big\rangle\alpha + \big\langle 2\big|1_b\big\rangle\beta \\ &= \alpha\,\mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1_a\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) + \beta\,\mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1_b\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big)\,, \\ \mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) &= \mathrm{tr}\Big(\Big(\big|1_a\big\rangle\alpha + \big|1_b\big\rangle\beta\Big)\big\langle 2\big|\Big) \\ &= \mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1_a\big\rangle\alpha\big\langle 2\big| + \big|1_b\big\rangle\beta\big\langle 2\big|\Big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.7}$$

This generalizes to

$$\mathrm{tr}(\alpha A + \beta B) = \alpha\,\mathrm{tr}(A) + \beta\,\mathrm{tr}(B) \tag{1.6.8}$$

immediately, wherein A, B are operators and α, β are numbers.

We apply this to expectation values, such as

$$\langle A\rangle = \big\langle\ \big|A\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{1.6.9}$$

where A is any operator, perhaps a function $f(X)$ of position operator X, or a function $g(P)$ of momentum operator P, or possibly something more complicated, like the symmetrized product $XP + PX$, say. Whatever the nature of operator A, we can read the above statement as

$$\langle A\rangle = \underbrace{\big\langle\ \big|A}_{\text{bra}}\ \underbrace{\big|\ \big\rangle}_{\text{ket}} = \mathrm{tr}\Big(\underbrace{\big|\ \big\rangle}_{\text{ket}}\underbrace{\big\langle\ \big|A}_{\text{bra}}\Big) \tag{1.6.10}$$

or as

$$\langle A\rangle = \underbrace{\big\langle\ \big|}_{\text{bra}}\ \underbrace{A\big|\ \big\rangle}_{\text{ket}} = \mathrm{tr}\Big(\underbrace{A\big|\ \big\rangle}_{\text{ket}}\underbrace{\big\langle\ \big|}_{\text{bra}}\Big)\,, \tag{1.6.11}$$

which introduces $|\ \rangle\langle\ |$ as the mathematical object that refers solely to the state of affairs of the physical system,

$$\langle A\rangle = \mathrm{tr}\Big(\underbrace{\big|\ \big\rangle\big\langle\ \big|}_{\text{physical state}}\underbrace{A}_{\text{operator considered}}\Big) = \mathrm{tr}\Big(A\big|\ \big\rangle\big\langle\ \big|\Big). \tag{1.6.12}$$

What has been achieved here is the complete separation of the mathematical entities that refer to the physical property (position, momentum, and functions of them, such as energy) and to the state of affairs. There is one appropriate operator A for the physical property, irrespective of the particular state that is actually the case, and all that characterizes the actual situation is contained in the ket-bra

$$\rho = \big|\ \big\rangle\big\langle\ \big|\,. \tag{1.6.13}$$

This is also an operator but not one that describes a physical property, rather it is the *statistical operator* that summarizes all statistical aspects

of the system as actually prepared. It is common to refer to the statistical operator as the *state operator* or simply the *state* of the physical system.

In particular, we extract probabilities from ρ as illustrated by the probability of finding the object between $x = a$ and $x = b$ $(a < b)$. We recall from (1.1.1) that

$$\text{prob}(a < x < b) = \int_a^b \mathrm{d}x \, \big|\psi(x)\big|^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}x \, \big|\psi(x)\big|^2 \, \chi_{a,b}(x) \,, \qquad (1.6.14)$$

where

$$\chi_{a,b}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad a < x < b \,, \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere,} \end{cases} \qquad (1.6.15)$$

is the *mesa function* for the interval $a < x < b$. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{prob}(a < x < b) &= \big\langle \, \big| \Big(\int \mathrm{d}x \, \big|x\big\rangle \, \chi_{a,b}(x) \, \big\langle x\big| \Big) \big| \, \big\rangle \\ &= \big\langle \, \big| \chi_{a,b}(X) \big| \, \big\rangle = \mathrm{tr}\Big(\chi_{a,b}(X) \big| \, \big\rangle \big\langle \, \big| \Big) \\ &= \mathrm{tr}\big(\chi_{a,b}(X) \rho \big) \,, \end{aligned} \qquad (1.6.16)$$

where we recognize the expectation value of a function of position operator X, namely $\chi_{a,b}(X)$. Indeed, such a probability is an expectation value, and the argument is easily extended to other probabilities as well; see Exercise 14 for an example.

In (1.6.12), we found

$$\langle A \rangle = \mathrm{tr}(A\rho) = \mathrm{tr}(\rho A) \,, \quad \rho = \big| \, \big\rangle \big\langle \, \big| \,, \qquad (1.6.17)$$

as if the order of multiplication did not matter. It really does not. We demonstrate this by evaluating $\mathrm{tr}(AB)$ and $\mathrm{tr}(BA)$ for $A = |1\rangle\langle 2|$ and $B = |3\rangle\langle 4|$, which is all we need, because all operators are linear combinations of such ingredients, and we know already that the trace respects this linearity. Therefore, it suffices to consider these special operators. See, then,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{tr}(AB) &= \mathrm{tr}\Big(\underbrace{|1\rangle\langle 2|3\rangle}_{\textsf{ket}} \underbrace{\langle 4|}_{\textsf{bra}} \Big) = \langle 4|1\rangle\langle 2|3\rangle \,, \\ \mathrm{tr}(BA) &= \mathrm{tr}\Big(\underbrace{|3\rangle\langle 4|1\rangle}_{\textsf{ket}} \underbrace{\langle 2|}_{\textsf{bra}} \Big) = \langle 2|3\rangle\langle 4|1\rangle \,. \end{aligned} \qquad (1.6.18)$$

Indeed, they are the same because the numbers $\langle 4|1\rangle$ and $\langle 2|3\rangle$ can be multiplied in either order without changing the value of the product. Note that $AB \neq BA$, as a rule, but their traces are the same.

Since the operators A, B themselves can be products, we have the more general rule

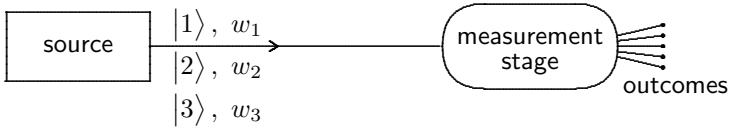
$$\mathrm{tr}(ABC) = \mathrm{tr}(CAB) = \mathrm{tr}(BCA) \tag{1.6.19}$$

for products of three factors and analogous statements about four, five, ... factors. All of them are summarized in the observation that

the value of a trace does not change when the factors in a product are permuted cyclically. (1.6.20)

This *cyclic property of the trace* is exploited very often.

So far, the letter ρ was just an abbreviation for the ket-bra $|\rangle\langle|$, the product of the ket and the bra describing the actual state of affairs. Let us now move on and consider a more general situation:



(1.6.21)

We have a source that puts out the atoms either in state described by the ket $|1\rangle$ or in the state for $|2\rangle$ or in the state for $|3\rangle$, whereby we have no clue what will be the case for the next atom except that we know that there are definite probabilities w_1, w_2, w_3 of occurrence for the three states. The probabilities have unit sum, $w_1 + w_2 + w_3 = 1$, because nothing else happens.

At the measurement stage, we perform a measurement of the physical property that is associated with operator A. Thus, we have an expectation value that is given by

$$\langle A\rangle = w_1\langle 1|A|1\rangle + w_2\underbrace{\langle 2|A|2\rangle}_{\substack{\text{expectation value}\\ \text{if } |2\rangle \text{ is the case}}} + w_3\langle 3|A|3\rangle \tag{1.6.22}$$

w_2: probability of getting $|2\rangle$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\langle A\rangle &= w_1\mathrm{tr}\Big(A|1\rangle\langle 1|\Big) + w_2\mathrm{tr}\Big(A|2\rangle\langle 2|\Big) + w_3\mathrm{tr}\Big(A|3\rangle\langle 3|\Big)\\ &= \mathrm{tr}\bigg(A\Big(|1\rangle w_1\langle 1| + |2\rangle w_2\langle 2| + |3\rangle w_3\langle 3|\Big)\bigg) = \mathrm{tr}(A\rho)\end{aligned} \tag{1.6.23}$$

with the statistical operator

$$\rho = \sum_{k=1}^{3} |k\rangle w_k \langle k| \,. \tag{1.6.24}$$

This ρ summarizes all that we know about the source: there are the state kets $|k\rangle$ and their statistical weights w_k.

There is nothing particular about the situation discussed, with three different states emitted by the source, there could be fewer or more. Accordingly, we have the more general case of

$$\rho = \sum_{k} |k\rangle w_k \langle k| \,, \quad w_k > 0 \,, \quad \sum_{k} w_k = 1 \,, \tag{1.6.25}$$

where the summation can have one or more terms, and it is understood that all kets and bras are normalized properly,

$$\langle k|k\rangle = 1 \quad \text{for all } k \,. \tag{1.6.26}$$

By measuring sufficiently many different physical properties, we can establish a body of experimental data that enables us to infer the statistical operator ρ with the desired precision. Then, we know the statistical properties of the atoms emitted by the source, and this is *all* we can find out. We cannot, in particular, establish the ingredients $|k\rangle$ and their weights w_k; we can only know ρ. This is also the only really meaningful thing to know since it gives us all probabilities for the statistical predictions. Nothing else is needed. Nor is anything else available.

When we state that knowledge of ρ does not translate into knowledge of the ingredients from which it is composed in (1.6.25), we mean of course that different right-hand sides can give the same ρ. To make this point, it is quite enough to give one example. The simplest is

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}\Big(|1\rangle\langle 1| + |2\rangle\langle 2|\Big) \quad \text{with} \quad \langle 1|2\rangle = 0 \,, \tag{1.6.27}$$

that is just two states mixed with equal weights of 50% for each. In view of their stated orthogonality, the kets

$$\begin{aligned} |\alpha\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|1\rangle + |2\rangle\Big) \,, \\ |\beta\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(|1\rangle - |2\rangle\Big) \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.28}$$

are also orthogonal and properly normalized. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{2}\Big(\big|\alpha\big\rangle\big\langle\alpha\big| + \big|\beta\big\rangle\big\langle\beta\big|\Big)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\big|1\big\rangle + \big|2\big\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\,\frac{\big\langle 1\big| + \big\langle 2\big|}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{\big|1\big\rangle - \big|2\big\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\,\frac{\big\langle 1\big| - \big\langle 2\big|}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 1\big| + \big|2\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) = \rho\end{aligned} \tag{1.6.29}$$

establishes

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}\Big(\big|\alpha\big\rangle\big\langle\alpha\big| + \big|\beta\big\rangle\big\langle\beta\big|\Big)\,, \tag{1.6.30}$$

which has different ingredients than the original ρ of (1.6.27). We speak of the two *blends* for one and the same *mixture* or *mixed state*. All that is relevant is the mixture ρ, not the particular ways in which one can blend it.

For

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big| + \big|2\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) = \frac{1}{2}\Big(\big|\alpha\big\rangle\big\langle\alpha\big| + \big|\beta\big\rangle\big\langle\beta\big|\Big)\,, \tag{1.6.31}$$

one can say that "it is *as if* we had 50% of $|1\rangle$ and 50% of $|2\rangle$" or one can say with equal justification that "it is *as if* we had 50% of $|\alpha\rangle$ and 50% of $|\beta\rangle$." But neither *as-if reality* is better than the other, both are on exactly the same footing, and there are many more as-if realities associated with this ρ.

The basic probability is that of finding a particular state, $|0\rangle$, say. If state $|k\rangle$ is the case, this probability is $|\langle 0|k\rangle|^2$, as in (1.3.16), so more generally, the probability is $\langle 0|\rho|0\rangle$. It must be nonnegative,

$$\big\langle 0\big|\rho\big|0\big\rangle \geq 0 \quad \text{for any choice of } \big|0\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.6.32}$$

In short, $\rho \geq 0$, which is a basic property of all statistical operators, their *positivity*. Other properties are that ρ is hermitian,

$$\rho = \rho^\dagger\,, \tag{1.6.33}$$

and normalized to unit trace,

$$\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = 1\,. \tag{1.6.34}$$

All these properties follow directly from the construction of ρ as a blend in (1.6.25).

We emphasize the physical significance of $\sum_k w_k = 1$. Suppose you perform a measurement that identifies the complete set of states $|a_n\rangle$, that is,

$$\sum_n |a_n\rangle\langle a_n| = 1\,. \tag{1.6.35}$$

Then, the probabilities of the various outcomes are $\langle a_n|\rho|a_n\rangle$ which are assuredly positive, and they must have unit sum,

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= \sum_n \langle a_n|\rho|a_n\rangle = \sum_n \mathrm{tr}\big(\rho|a_n\rangle\langle a_n|\big) \\ &= \mathrm{tr}\Bigg(\rho \underbrace{\sum_n |a_n\rangle\langle a_n|}_{=1}\Bigg) = \mathrm{tr}(\rho)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.36}$$

That is, $\mathrm{tr}(\rho) = 1$ is just the statement that the probabilities of mutually exclusive events have unit sum.

The extreme situation of only one term is the one we started with, $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$. Then, it is possible to almost identify the ingredients. "Almost" because of the phase arbitrariness,

$$\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,| = \Big(|\,\rangle\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\Big)\Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\langle\,|\Big)\,, \tag{1.6.37}$$

according to which the pair

$$|\,\rangle\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\,, \quad \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\langle\,| \qquad (\varphi \text{ real}) \tag{1.6.38}$$

is as good as the pair $|\,\rangle$, $\langle\,|$. It is one of the advantages of using the statistical operator rather than $|\,\rangle$ and $\langle\,|$ that there is no phase arbitrariness in ρ. The statistical operator ρ is unique; its ingredients are not.

The situation of $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$ is also special because, for such a *pure* state, it is characteristically true that $\rho^2 = \rho$; see

$$\rho^2 = \Big(|\,\rangle\langle\,|\Big)\Big(|\,\rangle\langle\,|\Big) = |\,\rangle\underbrace{\langle\,|\,\rangle}_{=1}\langle\,| = |\,\rangle\langle\,| = \rho\,. \tag{1.6.39}$$

If there is more than one term in $\rho = \sum_k |k\rangle w_k \langle k|$, then $\rho^2 \neq \rho$, as is best illustrated by considering the trace

$$\mathrm{tr}\big(\rho^2\big) = \sum_{j,k} \mathrm{tr}\Big(|j\rangle w_j \langle j|k\rangle w_k \langle k|\Big) = \sum_{j,k} w_j w_k \big|\langle j|k\rangle\big|^2\,. \tag{1.6.40}$$

Now, since $|j\rangle\langle j| \neq |k\rangle\langle k|$ if $j \neq k$ (we want *really* different ingredients), we have $\left|\langle j|k\rangle\right|^2 < 1$ for $j \neq k$, recall Exercise 6, so that

$$\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right) < \sum_{j,k} w_j w_k = \underbrace{\sum_j w_j}_{=1} \underbrace{\sum_k w_k}_{=1} = 1 \tag{1.6.41}$$

or $\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right) < 1$. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right) = 1 \quad \text{if} \quad \rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|\,, \quad \rho^2 = \rho \\ \text{and} \quad &\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right) < 1 \quad \text{otherwise}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.6.42}$$

Therefore, the number $\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right)$ can serve as a crude measure of the purity of the state, it is maximal, $\mathrm{tr}\left(\rho^2\right) = 1$, for a pure state, $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$, and surely less than unity for all truly mixed states.

1.7 Algebraic completeness of operators X and P

We have the position operator X and the momentum operator P, functions $f(X)$, $g(P)$ of either one, and upon forming products and sums of such functions can introduce rather arbitrary functions of both X and P. And these general functions $f(X,P)$ comprise *all* possible operators for a degree of freedom of this sort. In other words, position X and momentum P are *algebraically complete*.

To demonstrate this, we show that we can write any given operator A as a function of X and P, quite systematically. We begin with noting that $\langle x|A$ is a well-defined bra and $A|p\rangle$ is a well-defined ket and that $\langle x|A|p\rangle$ is a uniquely specified set of numbers once A is stated. These numbers appear in

$$\begin{aligned} A = 1\,A\,1 &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x|A \int \mathrm{d}p\,|p\rangle\langle p| \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,|x\rangle\langle x|A|p\rangle\langle p|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.7.1}$$

We divide and multiply by $\langle x|p\rangle$, the xp transformation function of (1.4.11) which is never zero, to arrive at

$$A = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,|x\rangle\langle x|\,a(x,p)\,|p\rangle\langle p|\,, \tag{1.7.2}$$

where

$$a(x,p) = \frac{\langle x|A|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} \tag{1.7.3}$$

is such that $A = 1$ is mapped onto $a(x,p) = 1$. Borrowing once again the terminology from classical mechanics, we call $a(x,p)$ a *phase-space function* of A. This mapping $A \to a(x,p)$ is linear; see Exercise 16.

Further, consistent with the general rules in (1.5.10) and (1.5.12), we have

$$\begin{aligned} |x\rangle\langle x| &= \int \mathrm{d}x' \, |x'\rangle \, \delta(x'-x) \, \langle x'| = \delta(X-x)\,, \\ |p\rangle\langle p| &= \int \mathrm{d}p' \, |p'\rangle \, \delta(p'-p) \, \langle p'| = \delta(P-p) \end{aligned} \tag{1.7.4}$$

and therefore

$$A = \int \mathrm{d}x \, \mathrm{d}p \; \delta(X-x) \, a(x,p) \, \delta(P-p)\,. \tag{1.7.5}$$

This equation already proves the case: we have expressed A as a function of X and P. But we can go one step further and evaluate the integrals over the delta functions, with the outcome

$$A = a(X,P)\Big|_{X,\,P\text{-ordered}} = a(X;P)\,, \tag{1.7.6}$$

where we must pay due attention to the structure of the previous expression (1.7.5). There all Xs stand to the left of all Ps, and this order must be preserved when we replace $x \to X$, $p \to P$ in $a(x,p)$.

We have thus achieved even more than what we really needed. Operator A is now expressed as an *ordered* function of X and P, for which the procedure gives a unique answer. Of course, we can interchange the roles of position and momentum in this argument and can equally well arrive at a unique P,X-ordered form, where all P operators are to the left of all X operators in products.

As a simple example, consider $A = PX$ for which

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x|A|p\rangle = \langle x|PX|p\rangle &= \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle x|\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial p}|p\rangle \\ &= \left(\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\right)^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle x|p\rangle = \left(\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\right)^2 \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} + \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 xp\right)\langle x|p\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.7.7}$$

where the last step exploits the familiar explicit form of $\langle x|p\rangle$ in (1.4.11). Accordingly,

$$a(x,p) = \frac{\langle x|A|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} = xp + \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}} \tag{1.7.8}$$

here, and we get the X,P-ordered form

$$A = PX = \left(xp + \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\right)\Bigg|_{\substack{x\,\to\,X,\ p\,\to\,P\\ \text{(ordered)}}} = XP - \mathrm{i}\hbar\,. \tag{1.7.9}$$

The result is, of course, as expected inasmuch as we just get the fundamental Heisenberg*–Born† *commutation relation*

$$XP - PX = [X,P] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,. \tag{1.7.10}$$

See Section 3.2 in *Basic Matters* for the basic properties of commutators, in particular their linearity, expressed by the sum rule, and their product rule. We recall the two extensions,

$$\big[f(X),P\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\frac{\partial f(X)}{\partial X}\,, \qquad \big[X,g(P)\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\frac{\partial g(P)}{\partial P}\,, \tag{1.7.11}$$

which are frequently used; see Section 5.1.4 in *Basic Matters*. Exercises 20 and 21 deal with related issues.

A simple statistical operator for a pure state, $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$, is our next example. We have

$$\big\langle x\big|\rho\big|p\big\rangle = \big\langle x\big|\,\big\rangle\big\langle\,\big|p\big\rangle = \psi(x)\psi(p)^* \tag{1.7.12}$$

and then

$$\frac{\big\langle x\big|\rho\big|p\big\rangle}{\big\langle x\big|p\big\rangle} = \frac{\big\langle x\big|\,\big\rangle\big\langle\,\big|p\big\rangle}{\big\langle x\big|p\big\rangle} = \sqrt{2\pi\hbar}\,\psi(x)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}\psi(p)^* \tag{1.7.13}$$

so that

$$\rho = \sqrt{2\pi\hbar}\,\psi(X)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}X;\,P/\hbar}\,\psi(P)^\dagger\,. \tag{1.7.14}$$

Here,

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}X;\,P/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}XP/\hbar}\Big|_{X,\,P\text{-ordered}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left(\frac{-\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^k X^k P^k \tag{1.7.15}$$

*Werner HEISENBERG (1901–1976) †Max BORN (1882–1970)

is a basic *ordered exponential function*. Its adjoint is

$$\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}X;\,P/\hbar}\right)^{\dagger} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}P;\,X/\hbar} \tag{1.7.16}$$

as one verifies immediately, and since $\rho^{\dagger} = \rho$, we get

$$\rho = \sqrt{2\pi\hbar}\,\psi(P)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}P;\,X/\hbar}\,\psi(X)^{\dagger} \tag{1.7.17}$$

for the P, X-ordered version of ρ.

When the ordered form of an operator is at hand, it is particularly easy to evaluate its trace,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{tr}(A) &= \mathrm{tr}\left(\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x|A\int \mathrm{d}p\,|p\rangle\langle p|\right)\\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,\langle x|A|p\rangle\langle p|x\rangle\\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,\underbrace{\frac{\langle x|A|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle}}_{a(x,p)=}\underbrace{\langle x|p\rangle\langle p|x\rangle}_{=1/(2\pi\hbar)}\end{aligned} \tag{1.7.18}$$

so that

$$\mathrm{tr}(A) = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,a(x,p)\,. \tag{1.7.19}$$

This has the appearance of a classical phase-space integral, counting one quantum state per phase-space area of $2\pi\hbar$, so to say.

Next, suppose an operator A is given in its X, P-ordered form and the statistical operator is given as a P, X-ordered function,

$$A = a(X;P)\,, \quad \rho = r(P;X)\,. \tag{1.7.20}$$

Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\langle A\rangle\,\mathrm{tr}(\rho A) &= \mathrm{tr}\left(\int \mathrm{d}p\,|p\rangle\langle p|\rho\int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x|A\right)\\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,\langle p|\rho|x\rangle\langle x|A|p\rangle\,,\end{aligned} \tag{1.7.21}$$

for the expectation value of A, where we meet

$$\begin{array}{c}\langle p|\rho|x\rangle = \langle p|r(P;X)|x\rangle = r(p,x)\langle p|x\rangle\\ \downarrow\ \downarrow\\ p\ \ x\end{array} \tag{1.7.22}$$

and

$$\langle x|A|p\rangle = \langle x|a(X;P)|p\rangle = a(x,p)\langle x|p\rangle\,. \qquad (1.7.23)$$
$$\downarrow\ \downarrow$$
$$x\ \ p$$

These just exploit the basic property of ordered operators, namely that X and P stand next to their respective eigenbras and eigenkets so that these operators can be equivalently replaced by their eigenvalues. Then,

$$\langle A\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\; r(p,x)a(x,p)\underbrace{\langle p|x\rangle\langle x|p\rangle}_{=1/(2\pi\hbar)} \qquad (1.7.24)$$

or

$$\langle A\rangle = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\, r(p,x)a(x,p)\,, \qquad (1.7.25)$$

which looks even more like a classical phase-space integral of the product of a density $r(p,x)$ and a phase-space function $a(x,p)$, whereby $\frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}$ suggests the instruction noted at (1.7.19), namely to count one quantum state per phase-space area of $2\pi\hbar$.

The seemingly classical appearance of (1.7.25) is striking; it is also profound, but we must keep in mind that we continue to talk about quantum mechanical traces and that the phase-space functions $r(p,x)$ and $a(x,p)$ are just particularly convenient numerical descriptions of the quantum mechanical operators ρ and A. We are *not* replacing quantum mechanics by some equivalent version of classical mechanics. There is no such thing.

1.8 Weyl commutator, Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff relations

The unitary operators $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}$ and $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}$ of Exercise 10 do not commute, except for special values of x' and p', and we can find out what is the difference between applying them in either order by establishing the X,P-ordered version of the operator

$$A = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}\,, \qquad (1.8.1)$$

which we thus define by its P,X-ordered version. We begin with

$$\langle x|A|p\rangle = \underbrace{\langle x|\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}}_{\langle x+x'|\,=}\underbrace{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}|p\rangle}_{=|p+p'\rangle} = \langle x+x'|p+p'\rangle \qquad (1.8.2)$$

and continue with

$$a(x,p) = \frac{\langle x|A|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} = \frac{\langle x+x'|p+p'\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(x+x')(p+p')/\hbar}}{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}$$
$$= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp'/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p'/\hbar}\,, \tag{1.8.3}$$

and now the replacement $a(x,p) \to a(X;P)$ gives us

$$A = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p'/\hbar}\,. \tag{1.8.4}$$

More explicitly, this says

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p'/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}\,, \tag{1.8.5}$$

which is Weyl's* commutation relation for the basic unitary operators associated with X and P, the *Weyl commutator* for short.

How about combining the various exponentials into one? That requires some care because the arguments of the exponentials do not commute with each other. But nevertheless we can be systematic about it, and we could use several methods for this purpose. Let us do it with a sequence of unitary transformations.

As a preparation, we recall that

$$U^\dagger f(A) U = f(U^\dagger A U) \tag{1.8.6}$$

for any function of operator A (arbitrary) and any arbitrary operator U. One easily verifies that it is true for any power of A, for example,

$$U^\dagger A^2 U = U^\dagger A U U^\dagger A U = \big(U^\dagger A U\big)^2\,, \tag{1.8.7}$$

and then it is true for all polynomials and finally for arbitrary functions; see also Exercise 26. Further, the differentiation rules in (1.7.11) imply

$$\Big[X,\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}g(P)}\Big] = -\hbar g'(P)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}g(P)}\,,$$
$$\Big[\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}f(X)},\, P\Big] = -\hbar f'(X)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}f(X)}\,, \tag{1.8.8}$$

which are equivalent to

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}g(P)}\,X\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}g(P)} = X - \hbar g'(P)\,,$$
$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}f(X)}\,P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}f(X)} = P - \hbar f'(X)\,, \tag{1.8.9}$$

with primes indicating differentiation with respect to the argument.

*Claus Hugo Hermann WEYL (1885–1955)

In the first step, then, we write

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X + x'P)/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'\left(X + \frac{x'}{p'}P\right)/\hbar} \quad \text{for} \quad p' \neq 0 \tag{1.8.10}$$

and note that

$$X + \frac{x'}{p'}P = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} X \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \tag{1.8.11}$$

and, therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X + x'P)/\hbar} &= \exp\left(\mathrm{i}p' \, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} X \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2}/\hbar\right) \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} . \end{aligned} \tag{1.8.12}$$

Now, we remember that we want to have a factor $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}$ on the right eventually, so we write

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X + x'P)/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \tag{1.8.13}$$

and observe that

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} = \exp\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} P \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}\right)^2\right), \tag{1.8.14}$$

wherein

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} P \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} = P - p' . \tag{1.8.15}$$

It follows that

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X + x'P)/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}(P - p')^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} , \tag{1.8.16}$$

where the first and second exponentials on the right are functions of P only and so there is no problem in combining them into one,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}P^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}(P - p')^2} &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}\left(P^2 - (P^2 - p')^2\right)} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2\hbar}\frac{x'}{p'}(2P - p')p'} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}x'p'/\hbar} . \end{aligned} \tag{1.8.17}$$

Accordingly,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X + x'P)/\hbar} &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}x'p'/\hbar} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar} \, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}x'p'/\hbar} , \end{aligned} \tag{1.8.18}$$

where the second equality is that of the right-hand sides in (1.8.1) and (1.8.4) or of the two sides in (1.8.5). These are examples of the famous *Baker**–*Campbell*†–*Hausdorff*‡ *relation*s among exponential functions of operators.

*Henry Frederick BAKER (1866–1956) †John Edward CAMPBELL (1862–1924)
‡Felix HAUSDORFF (1868–1942)

Chapter 2

Quantum Dynamics Reviewed

2.1 Temporal evolution

Relations such as

$$\langle x|X = x\langle x|\,, \quad X|x\rangle = |x\rangle x\,, \quad \langle x|P = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle x|\,,$$
$$\text{or} \quad \langle x|p\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}\,, \quad \int \mathrm{d}x\,|x\rangle\langle x| = 1 \tag{2.1.1}$$

and so forth all refer implicitly to a particular instant in time, the moment at which we measure position, or momentum, or some other property represented by a function $f(X, P)$ of position X and momentum P. More generally, however, there is the option of measuring one property now and another earlier or later. Therefore, we must extend the formalism so that we can consistently deal with time-dependent quantities. In short, we must be able to handle temporal evolution.

First of all, let us note that a measurement of position, say, at two different times are two different measurements, and so we need a symbol $X(t_1)$ for the position measurement at time t_1 and a symbol $X(t_2)$ for measurement at time t_2. Quite generally, then, we have a symbol $X(t)$ for position measurements at time t, and going with it are kets $|x, t\rangle$ and bras $\langle x, t|$ that refer to time t. The eigenket equation and the eigenbra equation above then generalize to

$$X(t)|x, t\rangle = |x, t\rangle x\,, \qquad \langle x, t|X(t) = x\langle x, t|\,. \tag{2.1.2}$$

Note that the eigenvalue x does not depend on time t because it is a stand-in for all possible measurement results, and they are the same at all times t. The orthonormality and completeness relations for the time-dependent kets

and bras,

$$\langle x,t|x',t\rangle = \delta(x-x')\,, \quad \int \mathrm{d}x\,|x,t\rangle\langle x,t| = 1\,, \tag{2.1.3}$$

are of the same appearance as the time-independent ones in (2.1.1). After all, we are just making the implicit time label explicit.

This story repeats for momentum P, where we have

$$\begin{aligned} P(t)|p,t\rangle &= |p,t\rangle p\,, \quad \langle p,t|P(t) = p\langle p,t|\,, \\ \langle p,t|p',t\rangle &= \delta(p-p')\,, \quad \int \mathrm{d}p\,|p,t\rangle\langle p,t| = 1\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.4}$$

and the links between the position description and the momentum description are also just as before,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x,t|p,t\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}\,, \\ \langle x,t|P(t) = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle x,t|\,, &\quad \langle p,t|X(t) = \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle p,t|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.5}$$

In general terms, all relations that we had so far remain true as long as all kets, all bras, and all operators refer to a common time. This includes the Heisenberg commutation relation

$$\big[X(t),P(t)\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \tag{2.1.6}$$

in particular, and also the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff relations of (1.8.18).

How do we relate the description at one time to that at another time? Clearly, a mapping of the kets and bras at time t to those at time $t+\tau$,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x,t| &\to \langle x,t+\tau| = \langle x,t|U\,, \\ |p,t\rangle &\to |p,t+\tau\rangle = U^\dagger|p,t\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.7}$$

must be a unitary transformation in order to preserve all geometrical relations among the kets and bras. Consider in particular the transformation function,

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar} = \langle x,t|p,t\rangle = \langle x,t+\tau|p,t+\tau\rangle = \langle x,t|UU^\dagger|p,t\rangle\,, \tag{2.1.8}$$

which requires

$$\langle x,t|p,t\rangle = \langle x,t|UU^\dagger|p,t\rangle \tag{2.1.9}$$

for all quantum numbers x and p. The completeness of the x states and the p states then implies immediately that the operator U in (2.1.7) is unitary,

$$UU^\dagger = 1\,. \tag{2.1.10}$$

We go from time t to a later time in a succession of small steps, eventually in a succession of infinitesimal steps. So, let us take the increment τ to be infinitesimal. Then the *unitary evolution operator* U will differ from the identity operator by an infinitesimal amount proportional to τ,

$$U = 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H\tau\,, \tag{2.1.11}$$

evolution operator for an infinitesimal time step — infinitesimal time step — generator for time changes

which you may regard as the definition of H, the operator that generates changes in time. We borrow the terminology from classical physics, where the corresponding object is the Hamilton* function that assigns an energy to each configuration, and so we call H the *Hamilton operator*. Its eigenvalues are the values of energy available to the physical system.

The factor $\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}$ is included in this definition for a double purpose. The i ensures that H is hermitian, $H = H^\dagger$, see

$$\begin{aligned} 1 = UU^\dagger &= \Big(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H\tau\Big)\Big(1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H^\dagger\tau\Big) \\ &= 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\big(H - H^\dagger\big)\tau, \quad \text{so that } H = H^\dagger\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.12}$$

and the $\hbar$ gives H the metrical dimension of energy because τ is a time and $\hbar$ has the metrical dimension of energy $\times$ time.

Now, from

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle x, t+\tau\big| &= \big\langle x, t\big|\Big(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H\tau\Big)\,, \\ \big|p, t+\tau\big\rangle &= \Big(1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H\tau\Big)\big|p, t\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.13}$$

we get the differential statements

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle x, t\big| = \frac{1}{\tau}\Big(\big\langle x, t+\tau\big| - \big\langle x, t\big|\Big)_{\tau\to 0} = \big\langle x, t\big|\Big(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H\Big) \tag{2.1.14}$$

*William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865)

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big|p,t\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\tau}\Big(\big|p,t+\tau\big\rangle - \big|p,t\big\rangle\Big)_{\tau\to 0} = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H\big|p,t\big\rangle \tag{2.1.15}$$

or

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle x,t\big| = \big\langle x,t\big|H\,, \quad -\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big|p,t\big\rangle = H\big|p,t\big\rangle\,, \tag{2.1.16}$$

and the adjoint statements read

$$-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big|x,t\big\rangle = H\big|x,t\big\rangle\,, \quad \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle p,t\big| = \big\langle p,t\big|H\,. \tag{2.1.17}$$

The two bra equations are obviously particular examples of

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle\ldots,t\big| = \big\langle\ldots,t\big|H \tag{2.1.18}$$

with the ellipsis standing for any corresponding label, any set of quantum numbers specifying the bra. This is the general form of Schrödinger's equation of motion — the celebrated *Schrödinger equation*, here for bras. The adjoint statement

$$-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big|\ldots,t\big\rangle = H\big|\ldots,t\big\rangle \tag{2.1.19}$$

is the Schrödinger equation for kets, exemplified by the two ket equations in (2.1.16) and (2.1.17).

We recall that in the present context of motion along the x axis, all operators are functions of X and P, now more precisely, of $X(t)$ and $P(t)$. This remark applies in particular to the Hamilton operator,

$$H = H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)\,, \tag{2.1.20}$$

where we note the possibility of a parametric time dependence as well, that is, at different times, we may have structurally different functions of X and P for the Hamilton operator.

Upon invoking the differential-operator representation for P in (2.1.5), we have

$$\big\langle x,t\big|H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big) = H\bigg(x,\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x},t\bigg)\big\langle x,t\big| \tag{2.1.21}$$

so that the position wave function to ket $|\ \rangle$,

$$\psi(x,t) = \big\langle x,t\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{2.1.22}$$

obeys the differential equation

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\psi(x,t) = H\left(x, \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, t\right)\psi(x,t)\,. \tag{2.1.23}$$

This is often referred to as *the* Schrödinger equation, and equally frequently, one meets this name association for the typical case of

$$H = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2M}P^2}_{\text{kinetic energy}} + \underbrace{V(X)}_{\text{potential energy}} \tag{2.1.24}$$

when

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\psi(x,t) = \left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + V(x)\right)\psi(x,t)\,. \tag{2.1.25}$$

This equation for a particle of mass M moving along the x axis is, however, nothing more than a quite special version of (2.1.18), a special version of great practical importance, yes, but a special version nevertheless.

The evolution of operator $X(t)$ is now found from the evolution of the bras and kets in

$$X(t) = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \big|x,t\big\rangle x \big\langle x,t\big|\,, \tag{2.1.26}$$

namely

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X(t) &= \int \mathrm{d}x \left(\frac{\partial\big|x,t\big\rangle}{\partial t} x \big\langle x,t\big| + \big|x,t\big\rangle x \frac{\partial\big\langle x,t\big|}{\partial t}\right)\\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H\big|x,t\big\rangle x\big\langle x,t\big| + \big|x,t\big\rangle x\big\langle x,t\big|\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}H\right)\\ &= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}HX + \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}XH = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[X,H]\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.1.27}$$

or more explicitly,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X(t) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\Big[X(t), H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)\Big]\,. \tag{2.1.28}$$

The argument can be repeated, with the necessary changes, for $P(t)$ with the analogous outcome

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P(t) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\Big[P(t), H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)\Big]\,. \tag{2.1.29}$$

These are examples of Heisenberg's equations of motion, the *Heisenberg equation*. We shall get to the general form shortly. Right now, however, we recall the lesson of Exercise 20, namely that

$$[X, f] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial f}{\partial P} \quad \text{and} \quad [f, P] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial f}{\partial X} \tag{2.1.30}$$

for any operator function of X and P — or, more pedantically, of $X(t)$, $P(t)$, and possibly t as a parameter. So,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} X = \frac{\partial H}{\partial P}\,, \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} P = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X}\,, \tag{2.1.31}$$

which have exactly the same appearance as Hamilton's equations of motion in classical mechanics. These equations are correct on the classical level because they are already true on the quantum level.

What about the time derivative of an arbitrary operator function of X and P, $F = F(X, P, t)$? We know that we can always exploit the completeness of the x states and the p states to write it as

$$F = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p \, \big|x, t\big\rangle f(x, p, t) \big\langle p, t\big| \tag{2.1.32}$$

with

$$f(x, p, t) = \big\langle x, t\big| F\big(X(t), P(t), t\big)\big| p, t\big\rangle\,. \tag{2.1.33}$$

The time derivative of F has three contributions,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} F = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p \, \underbrace{\frac{\partial \big|x, t\big\rangle}{\partial t}}_{= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H \big|x, t\big\rangle} f(x, p, t) \big\langle p, t\big| \\ + \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p \, \big|x, t\big\rangle f(x, p, t) \underbrace{\frac{\partial \big\langle p, t\big|}{\partial t}}_{= \big\langle p, t\big| \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar} H} \\ + \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p \, \big|x, t\big\rangle \frac{\partial f(x, p, t)}{\partial t} \big\langle p, t\big|\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.34}$$

of which the first is $\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} HF$ and the second is $\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar} FH$, so that they together are $\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[F, H]$. The third and last contribution is the parametric time derivative

of F,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}F\big(X(t),P(t),t\big) = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p\,\big|x,t\big\rangle\frac{\partial f(x,p,t)}{\partial t}\big\langle p,t\big|\,, \tag{2.1.35}$$

(only)

which we see after first noting that the time arguments in

$$f(x,p,t) = \big\langle x,t\big|F\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)\big|p,t\big\rangle \tag{2.1.36}$$

(the same time; *any* other *common* time)

are of different significance. We demonstrate the nature of the arbitrary common time by labeling it as t' in

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle x,t'\big|F\big(X(t'),P(t'),t\big)\big|p,t'\big\rangle &= F\bigg(x,\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x},t\bigg)\big\langle x,t'\big|p,t'\big\rangle \\ &= F\bigg(x,\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x},t\bigg)\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.1.37}$$

where it is now obvious that this number is really independent of the common time t', to which X and P refer. As a consequence,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}f(x,p,t) = \big\langle x,t\big|\frac{\partial F\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)}{\partial t}\big|p,t\big\rangle\,, \tag{2.1.38}$$

and the third term in (2.1.34) is $\dfrac{\partial F}{\partial t}$ indeed.

In summary, then, we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}F = \underbrace{\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[F,H]}_{\substack{\text{dynamical}\\ \text{time dependence}}} + \underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial t}F}_{\substack{\text{parametric}\\ \text{time dependence}}}\,. \tag{2.1.39}$$

This is the general form of *Heisenberg's equation of motion*, the quantum analog of Hamilton's equation of motion in classical mechanics. The two equations that govern the evolution of quantum systems, namely

– the Schrödinger equation for the temporal evolution of bras, kets, and wave functions, and
– the Heisenberg equation for the temporal evolution of operators, (2.1.40)

are two sides of the same coin, of course; see Exercise 32 in this context. In any particular application, one of them can be easier to use than the other.

There are two special cases of the Heisenberg equation. First, if $F = X$ or $F = P$, then there is no parametric time dependence and we have

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[X, H]\,, \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[P, H] \tag{2.1.41}$$

as in (2.1.28) and (2.1.29) without a $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}$ term. See Exercise 31 for an elementary example.

Second, if F is the statistical operator $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$, or a convex sum of such projection operators, then there is no total time dependence,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\rho = 0\,, \tag{2.1.42}$$

because, by its physical nature, ρ refers to a particular time at which the state of affairs is specified — such as, at $t = 0$, the system is described by the initial wave function $\psi_0(x)$ — and therefore does not depend on the evolution time t. For a statistical operator, we thus have

$$0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho + \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[\rho, H] \tag{2.1.43}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}[\rho, H]\,. \tag{2.1.44}$$

This quantum analog of Liouville's* equation of motion of classical statistical physics is known as the *von Neumann*† *equation.*

More explicitly, the constancy in time of ρ means that

$$\rho = \rho\big(X(t_1), P(t_1), t_1\big) = \rho\big(X(t_2), P(t_2), t_2\big)\,, \tag{2.1.45}$$

where we have different functions of X and P at the two times but such that, if the first function is taken for $X(t_1)$ and $P(t_1)$ and the second function for $X(t_2)$ and $P(t_2)$, we obtain the same operator ρ as a result. That is, the parametric time dependence compensates exactly for the dynamical time dependence. All of this will get clearer when we study some simple but instructive examples in Chapter 3.

*Joseph LIOUVILLE (1809–1882) †John (János) VON NEUMANN (1903–1957)

2.2 Time transformation functions

Finding a solution of the Schrödinger equation means to express the wave function at a later time in terms of the given wave function at the earlier initial time. Using the completeness of the x states at the earlier time t_0, we can express the later wave function as

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(x,t) = \langle x,t|\ \rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}x'\, \langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle\langle x',t_0|\ \rangle \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x'\, \langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle\, \psi(x',t_0)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.1}$$

Accordingly, the problem is reduced to finding the *time transformation function* $\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle$ that relates the x description at t_0 to that at t. The Schrödinger equation for bra $\langle x,t|$ implies

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle &= \langle x,t|H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)|x',t_0\rangle \\ &= H\left(x,\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x},t\right)\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.2}$$

as the equation of motion for $\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle$, to be solved with the initial condition

$$\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle\Big|_{t\,\to\,t_0} = \delta(x-x')\,. \tag{2.2.3}$$

But this is only one of the many possibilities. We could also relate the momentum descriptions to each other,

$$\psi(p,t) = \int \mathrm{d}p'\, \langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle\, \psi(p',t_0)\,, \tag{2.2.4}$$

where the time transformation function $\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle$ obeys the Schrödinger equation

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle &= \langle p,t|H\big(X(t),P(t),t\big)|p',t_0\rangle \\ &= H\left(\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p},p,t\right)\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.5}$$

subject to the initial condition

$$\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle\Big|_{t\,\to\,t_0} = \delta(p-p')\,. \tag{2.2.6}$$

Or we relate $\langle x,t|$ to $|p,t_0\rangle$,

$$\psi(x,t) = \int \mathrm{d}p \, \langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle \, \psi(p,t_0) \,, \tag{2.2.7}$$

so that we turn the momentum wave function at t_0 into the position wave function at time t. Here, we meet the xp time transformation function $\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle$ for which

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle = H\left(x, \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, t\right) \langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle \tag{2.2.8}$$

is the Schrödinger equation and

$$\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle\Big|_{t \to t_0} = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \tag{2.2.9}$$

is the initial condition.

Finally, we have the px time transformation function $\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle$ in

$$\psi(p,t) = \int \mathrm{d}x \, \langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle \, \psi(x,t_0) \,. \tag{2.2.10}$$

Its Schrödinger equation reads

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = H\left(\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial p}, p, t\right) \langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle \,, \tag{2.2.11}$$

and the initial condition is

$$\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle\Big|_{t \to t_0} = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \,. \tag{2.2.12}$$

As soon as we know one of the transformation functions, we can get the other ones by Fourier transformation, as illustrated by

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}p \, \langle x,t|p,t\rangle \langle p,t|x',t_0\rangle \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}p \, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \langle p,t|x',t_0\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.13}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}p \, \langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle \langle p,t_0|x',t_0\rangle \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}p \, \langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px'/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.14}$$

where we get the xx version from the px or the xp forms. A bit more generally, but in the same spirit, are composition laws such as

$$\langle x, t|x', t_0\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}p \, \langle x, t|p, T\rangle\langle p, T|x', t_0\rangle \,, \tag{2.2.15}$$

where T is any (intermediate) time, the extreme cases of $t = T$ and $T = t_0$ are those of (2.2.13) and (2.2.14). This equation is actually an expression of the fact that evolution happens in steps: first you go from t_0 to T and then from T to t. See also Exercise 34.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 3

Examples

3.1 Force-free motion

As the first example we consider force-free motion, for which the Hamilton operator is

$$H = \frac{1}{2M} P^2 \,, \tag{3.1.1}$$

just kinetic energy, no potential energy, that is $V(x) = 0$ in (2.1.24). The Heisenberg equations of motion,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} P &= -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X} = 0 \,, \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} X &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial P} = \frac{1}{M} P \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.2}$$

look exactly like their classical analogs, and we solve them easily,

$$P(t) = P(t_0) \,, \quad X(t) = X(t_0) + \frac{t - t_0}{M} P(t_0) \,. \tag{3.1.3}$$

We put these aside for now and turn to the Schrödinger equation and the time transformation functions. Those with bra $\langle p, t|$ are simplest because for them, the Hamilton operator is a number,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle p, t| = \langle p, t| \frac{1}{2M} P(t)^2 = \frac{p^2}{2M} \langle p, t| \,, \tag{3.1.4}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle p, t | x, t_0 \rangle &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \frac{p^2}{2M} (t - t_0)} \langle p, t_0 | x, t_0 \rangle \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \frac{p^2}{2M} (t - t_0)} \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.5}$$

is the immediate solution of the Schrödinger differential equation with the initial condition at $t = t_0$ correctly taken into account.

The xx time transformation function is now obtained by a Fourier transformation,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}p\,\langle x,t|p,t\rangle\langle p,t|x',t_0\rangle \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}p\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^2}{2M}(t-t_0)}\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px'/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \\ &= \int \frac{\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^2}{2M}(t-t_0)}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(x-x')p/\hbar}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.6}$$

This is a gaussian* integral, which we evaluate in accordance with

$$\int \mathrm{d}y\;\mathrm{e}^{-\alpha y^2+\beta y} = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{\alpha}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\beta^2}{4\alpha}} \quad \text{for} \quad \mathrm{Re}(\alpha)\geq 0\,, \tag{3.1.7}$$

here for

$$\alpha = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{t-t_0}{2M} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(x-x')\,. \tag{3.1.8}$$

The outcome is

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle &= \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{t-t_0}{2M}}}\;\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(x-x')\right)^2}{2\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{t-t_0}{2M}}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{t-t_0}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.9}$$

It is worth verifying that this is indeed a solution of the Schrödinger differential equation

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle\,, \tag{3.1.10}$$

which check is easily performed, and that it obeys the initial condition (2.2.3),

$$\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle \to \delta(x-x') \quad \text{as} \quad t\to t_0\,. \tag{3.1.11}$$

In this limit, $t-t_0$ becomes arbitrarily small so that $\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{t-t_0}}$ goes through many oscillations over small ranges of x', thus effectively washing

*Karl Friedrich GAUSS (1777–1855)

out any contribution to

$$\int \mathrm{d}x' \; \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{t-t_0}} f(x') \tag{3.1.12}$$

from $x' \neq x$, and the only actual contribution to the integral originates in the vicinity of $x' = x$ where the argument of the exponential function is extremal. This contribution is multiplied by the prefactor $\propto (t-t_0)^{-1/2}$ which is exceedingly large in the limit $t \to t_0$. Thus, indeed, $\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle$ has the characteristic features of $\delta(x-x')$ as $t \to t_0$. What remains to be checked is the correct normalization; see

$$\int \mathrm{d}x' \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}}\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{t-t_0}} = \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{1}{t-t_0}}} = 1\,, \tag{3.1.13}$$

it is just another gaussian integral; see also Exercise 35.

Let us look at the dependence of the px time transformation function $\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle$ on its labels p,t and x,t_0. We have the t derivative in (3.1.4),

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \frac{p^2}{2M}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle\,, \tag{3.1.14}$$

and the immediate statements

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle &= \langle p,t|X(t)|x,t_0\rangle\,,\\
\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle &= \langle p,t|P(t_0)|x,t_0\rangle\,,\\
\text{and}\quad -\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle &= \langle p,t|\underbrace{H(t_0)}_{=\frac{1}{2M}P(t_0)^2}|x,t_0\rangle
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.15}$$

about the other derivatives. We can turn all the operators on the right into numbers if we express them in terms of $P(t)$ and $X(t_0)$ because these operators will meet their eigenbras or eigenkets and can then be replaced by the eigenvalues. With the solutions of Heisenberg's equations of motion (3.1.2) at hand in (3.1.3), we achieve this quite easily, inasmuch as

$$\begin{aligned}
P(t_0) = P(t)\,, \quad X(t) &= X(t_0) + \frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t_0)\\
&= X(t_0) + \frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t)\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.16}$$

Accordingly, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle &= \left(x+\frac{t-t_0}{M}p\right)\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle\,,\\
\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle &= p\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle\,,\\
-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle &= \frac{p^2}{2M}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.17}$$

and all are easily checked against the explicit expression for $\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle$ in (3.1.5). Note in particular that the last equation amounts to

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle\,. \tag{3.1.18}$$

As a simple, yet important application of the xx time transformation function, we use it to find $\psi(x,t)$ if $\psi(x,t_0)$ is the gaussian wave function of the minimum-uncertainty state, that is, $\delta X\,\delta P = \frac{1}{2}\hbar$. In accordance with (4.8.10) in *Basic Matters*, we thus have

$$\psi(x,t_0) = \frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\left(\frac{1}{2}x/\delta X\right)^2}\,, \tag{3.1.19}$$

where δX is the spread in position, $\delta X = \sqrt{\langle X^2\rangle - \langle X\rangle^2}$, at time t_0; the momentum spread is $\delta P = \dfrac{\hbar}{2}\Big/\delta X$, of course. So,

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi(x,t) &= \int \mathrm{d}x'\,\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\rangle\,\psi(x',t_0) \qquad (3.1.20)\\
&= \int \mathrm{d}x'\,\sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{t-t_0}}\,\frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\left(\frac{1}{2}x'/\delta X\right)^2}\,.
\end{aligned}$$

This is another gaussian integral, as we emphasize by isolating the various factors,

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi(x,t) &= \frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X}}\sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{x^2}{t-t_0}}\int \mathrm{d}x'\;\mathrm{e}^{-\alpha x'^2+\beta x'}\\
&= \frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X}}\sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}}\,\frac{\pi}{\alpha}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{x^2}{t-t_0}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\beta^2}{4\alpha}}
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.21}$$

with

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{1}{t-t_0} + \frac{1}{(2\delta X)^2} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{1}{t-t_0}\left(1 + \mathrm{i}\frac{\hbar/2}{(\delta X)^2}\frac{t-t_0}{M}\right)$$
$$= \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{1}{t-t_0}\left(1 + \mathrm{i}\frac{t-t_0}{M}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}\right) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{1}{t-t_0}\frac{1}{\epsilon(t)} \tag{3.1.22}$$

and $\beta = \dfrac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\dfrac{Mx}{t-t_0}$, where

$$\epsilon(t-t_0) = \left(1 + \mathrm{i}\frac{t-t_0}{M}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}\right)^{-1} \tag{3.1.23}$$

is a convenient abbreviation. We meet it in the prefactor,

$$\sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar(t-t_0)}\frac{\pi}{\alpha}} = \sqrt{\epsilon(t-t_0)}\,, \tag{3.1.24}$$

and in the argument of the exponential function,

$$\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{x^2}{t-t_0} + \frac{\beta^2}{4\alpha} = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{x^2}{t-t_0} + \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar(t-t_0)}{2M}\epsilon(t-t_0)\left(\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{Mx}{t-t_0}\right)^2$$
$$= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{x^2}{t-t_0}\underbrace{\Big(1-\epsilon(t-t_0)\Big)}_{=\mathrm{i}\frac{t-t_0}{M}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}\epsilon(t-t_0)}$$
$$= -\frac{\epsilon(t-t_0)}{2\hbar}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}x^2 = -\epsilon(t-t_0)\Big(\frac{x}{2\delta X}\Big)^2, \tag{3.1.25}$$

where the last step exploits $\delta P = \dfrac{\hbar}{2}\Big/\delta X$.

In summary, we have the compact result

$$\psi(x,t) = \frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X/\epsilon(t-t_0)}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon(t-t_0)\left(\frac{1}{2}x/\delta X\right)^2} \tag{3.1.26}$$

for the time-dependent wave function; this is (5.1.37) in *Basic Matters*. We square $\psi(x,t)$ to obtain the time-dependent probability density

$$\big|\psi(x,t)\big|^2 = \frac{(2\pi)^{-1/2}}{\delta X(t)}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(x/\delta X(t)\right)^2}\,, \tag{3.1.27}$$

where

$$\delta X(t) = \frac{\delta X}{|\epsilon(t-t_0)|} = \delta X\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}\right)^2} \tag{3.1.28}$$

or

$$\delta X(t) = \sqrt{(\delta X)^2 + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\delta P\right)^2}\,. \tag{3.1.29}$$

The relations

$$\mathrm{Re}\big(\epsilon(t-t_0)\big) = \big|\epsilon(t-t_0)\big|^2 = \left(1 + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\frac{\delta P}{\delta X}\right)^2\right)^{-1} \tag{3.1.30}$$

help get this result.

3.1.1 *Time-dependent spreads*

The time-dependent position spread

$$\begin{aligned}\delta X(t) &= \sqrt{(\delta X)^2 + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\delta P\right)^2} \\ &\cong \frac{t-t_0}{M}\delta P \quad \text{for} \quad t - t_0 \gg \frac{M\delta X}{\delta P}\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.31}$$

illustrates the so-called "spreading of the wave function", a phenomenon that always occurs for free-moving quantum objects. It is just a manifestation of the familiar fact that an initial momentum spread turns into a rather large position spread after a while, even if the initial position spread is small. The time scale for this spreading is set by the ratio $M\delta X/\delta P$; it happens the faster, the larger is the initial momentum spread δP, and wave functions of less massive objects spread more rapidly than those of more massive objects.

The result about $\delta X(t)$ is more generally true than the specific example of an initial gaussian wave function might suggest. To make the general point, we return to the solutions of Heisenberg's equations of motion in (3.1.3) and note that

$$\begin{aligned}P(t)^2 &= P(t_0)^2\,, \\ X(t)^2 &= X(t_0)^2 + \frac{t-t_0}{M}\Big(X(t_0)P(t_0) + P(t_0)X(t_0)\Big) \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t_0)\right)^2\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.32}$$

so that we have the expectation values

$$\big\langle P(t)\big\rangle = \big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle\ , \quad \big\langle X(t)\big\rangle = \big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle + \frac{t-t_0}{M}\,\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle \tag{3.1.33}$$

for the operators and

$$\begin{aligned}\Big\langle P(t)^2\Big\rangle &= \Big\langle P(t_0)^2\Big\rangle\ ,\\ \Big\langle X(t)^2\Big\rangle &= \Big\langle X(t_0)^2\Big\rangle + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\right)^2\Big\langle P(t_0)^2\Big\rangle\\ &\qquad + \frac{t-t_0}{M}\,\Big\langle\Big(X(t_0)P(t_0)+P(t_0)X(t_0)\Big)\Big\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.34}$$

for their squares. The time-dependent spreads of X and P are therefore related to those at the initial time by

$$\begin{aligned}\delta X(t)^2 &= \Big\langle X(t)^2\Big\rangle - \big\langle X(t)\big\rangle^2\\ &= \delta X(t_0)^2 + \left(\frac{t-t_0}{M}\delta P(t_0)\right)^2\\ &\qquad + 2\frac{t-t_0}{M}\left(\Big\langle\frac{1}{2}\big[X(t_0)P(t_0)+P(t_0)X(t_0)\big]\Big\rangle\right.\\ &\qquad\qquad \left. - \big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle\,\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle\right),\\ \delta P(t)^2 &= \delta P(t_0)^2\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.35}$$

so there is no change in the momentum spread, which is as anticipated because no forces are acting that would transfer momentum. By contrast, the position spread does change in time, and at very late times, it is given by

$$\delta X(t) \cong \frac{t-t_0}{M}\delta P(t_0) \quad \text{(at late times)} \tag{3.1.36}$$

confirming quite generally what we found in (3.1.31) for the particular situation of an initial minimum-uncertainty wave function. At intermediate times, the correlation term

$$C(t_0) = \Big\langle\frac{1}{2}\big[X(t_0)P(t_0)+P(t_0)X(t_0)\big]\Big\rangle - \big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle\,\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle \tag{3.1.37}$$

may be relevant in (3.1.35). The value of the *position–momentum correlation* $C(t_0)$ can be positive, or negative, or vanishing altogether.

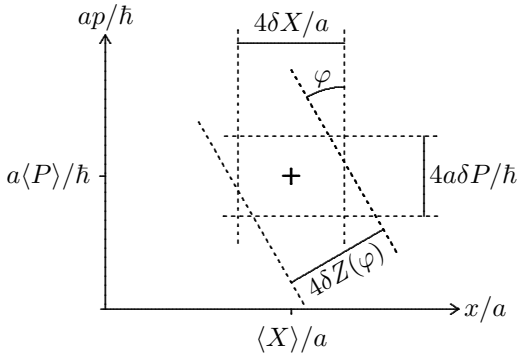
3.1.2 *Uncertainty ellipse*

For a visualization of the "spreading of the wave function", we use a graphical representation in the x, p-plane, the so-called *phase space*. Since the metrical dimensions of position x and momentum p are different, we choose an arbitrary length scale a and the corresponding momentum scale $\hbar/a$, recall (1.4.16) here, and deal with the dimensionless operators X/a for position and $aP/\hbar$ for momentum.

The pair

$$\Big(\big\langle X/a\big\rangle, \big\langle aP/\hbar\big\rangle\Big) = \Big(\langle X\rangle/a, a\langle P\rangle/\hbar\Big) \tag{3.1.38}$$

of their expectation values identifies the central point in the phase space for the given state of the system, marked by the cross + in this plot:



(3.1.39)

The vertical and horizontal dashed lines define the strips of width $4\,\delta X/a$ and $4a\,\delta P/\hbar$, respectively, that indicate the spreads in position and momentum, taking two standard deviations to each side of the mean value, so to say.

The horizontal and vertical directions are but two of many in phase space. Let us therefore consider the one-parameter family of operators $Z(\varphi)$ that we obtain by rotating the x axis toward the p axis,

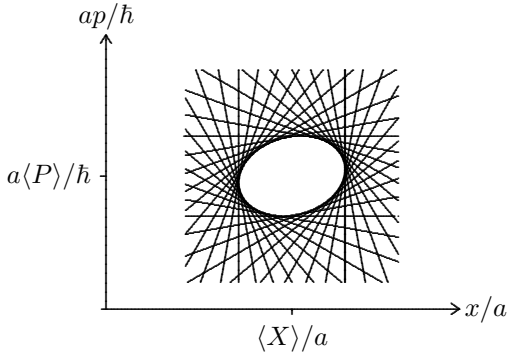
$$Z(\varphi) = \big(X/a\big)\cos(\varphi) + \big(aP/\hbar\big)\sin(\varphi)\,. \tag{3.1.40}$$

The rotation angle φ specifies the chosen direction in phase space, with $\varphi = 0$ for the x axis and $\varphi = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ for the p axis.

For each value of φ, we also draw the two lines that define the strip of width $4\,\delta Z(\varphi)$ centered at the cross + in the plot, whereby

$$\begin{aligned}\delta Z(\varphi) &= \sqrt{\Big\langle Z(\varphi)^2 \Big\rangle - \big\langle Z(\varphi) \big\rangle^{\,2}} \\ &= \Big(\big(\delta X/a\big)^2 \cos(\varphi)^2 + \big(a\,\delta P/\hbar\big)^2 \sin(\varphi)^2 + \big(C/\hbar\big) \sin(2\varphi) \Big)^{\frac{1}{2}}\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.41}$$

involves the position spread δX, the momentum spread δP, and the position–momentum correlation C. Together, all these strips identify an area whose boundary is an ellipse centered at the location (3.1.38) of the cross in the plot in (3.1.39):



(3.1.42)

Point $\big(x/a, ap/\hbar\big)$ is on this *uncertainty ellipse* if

$$\left(\frac{x-\langle X\rangle}{2\delta X}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{p-\langle P\rangle}{2\delta P}\right)^2 - \frac{2C}{\delta X\,\delta P}\,\frac{x-\langle X\rangle}{2\delta X}\,\frac{p-\langle P\rangle}{2\delta P} = 1 - \left(\frac{C}{\delta X\,\delta P}\right)^2. \tag{3.1.43}$$

It follows that the area enclosed by the uncertainty ellipse, in units of $\hbar$, is

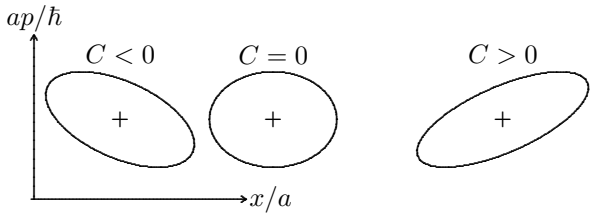
$$\frac{4\pi}{\hbar}\sqrt{\big(\delta X\,\delta P\big)^2 - C^2}\,. \tag{3.1.44}$$

We multiply by $a \times (\hbar/a) = \hbar$ to reinstall the metrical dimensions for X and P and get

$$\text{area} = 4\pi\sqrt{\big(\delta X\,\delta P\big)^2 - C^2}\,. \tag{3.1.45}$$

In the course of time, the center of the uncertainty ellipse moves with constant velocity parallel to the x axis, as stated in (3.1.33), while the shape of the ellipse changes in accordance with what (3.1.35) and the solution of

Exercise 39 tell us about the major and minor axes and their orientation. The area enclosed by the ellipse, however, does not change in time:



(3.1.46)

The ellipse in the middle refers to the instant when $C(t) = 0$ and, since $\langle P \rangle > 0$ here, the ellipse on the left refers to an earlier time (when $C < 0$) and that on the right to a later time (when $C > 0$).

3.2 Constant force

As the second example we consider the motion under the influence of a constant force F, for which the Hamilton operator is

$$H = \frac{1}{2M} P^2 - FX \,. \tag{3.2.1}$$

Heisenberg's equations of motion,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} X &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial P} = \frac{1}{M} P \,, \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} P &= -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X} = F \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.2}$$

confirm that a constant force F is acting. In fact, these equations look exactly like their classical counterparts and so do their solutions

$$\begin{aligned} P(t) &= P(t_0) + F(t - t_0) = P(t_0) + FT \,, \\ X(t) &= X(t_0) + \frac{t - t_0}{M} P(t_0) + \frac{F}{2M} (t - t_0)^2 \\ &= X(t_0) + \frac{T}{M} P(t_0) + \frac{FT^2}{2M} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.3}$$

where we abbreviate the elapsed time by T,

$$T \equiv t - t_0 \,. \tag{3.2.4}$$

For the time dependence of the expectation values, we find

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle P(t)\big\rangle &= \big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle + FT\,,\\ \big\langle X(t)\big\rangle &= \big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle + \frac{T}{M}\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle + \frac{FT^2}{2M}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.5}$$

again of classical appearance. Their squares

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle P(t)\big\rangle^{\,2} &= \big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle^{\,2} + 2FT\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle + (FT)^2\,,\\ \big\langle X(t)\big\rangle^{\,2} &= \big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle^{\,2} + \frac{2T}{M}\big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle\\ &\quad + \left(\frac{T}{M}\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle\right)^2 + \frac{FT^2}{M}\big\langle X(t_0)\big\rangle\\ &\quad + \frac{FT^3}{M^2}\big\langle P(t_0)\big\rangle + \left(\frac{FT^2}{2M}\right)^2\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.6}$$

are combined with the expectation values of

$$\begin{aligned}P(t)^2 &= P(t_0)^2 + 2FTP(t_0) + (FT)^2\,,\\ X(t)^2 &= X(t_0)^2 + \frac{T}{M}\Big(X(t_0)P(t_0) + P(t_0)X(t_0)\Big)\\ &\quad + \left(\frac{T}{M}P(t_0)\right)^2 + \frac{FT^2}{M}X(t_0)\\ &\quad + \frac{FT^3}{M^2}P(t_0) + \left(\frac{FT^2}{2M}\right)^2\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.7}$$

to produce

$$\begin{aligned}\delta P(t)^2 &= \delta P(t_0)^2\,,\\ \delta X(t)^2 &= \delta X(t_0)^2 + \frac{2T}{M}C(t_0) + \left(\frac{T}{M}\right)^2\delta P(t_0)^2\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.8}$$

with the initial position–momentum correlation $C(t_0)$ of (3.1.37). We note that these equations show no sign of the force F, which is to say that the evolution of the spreads in X and P, as well as of the correlation between them, is not affected by the force. The force determines the mean momentum $\big\langle P(t)\big\rangle$ and the mean position $\big\langle X(t)\big\rangle$ but not their spreads. As a consequence, the uncertainty ellipse of Section 3.1.2 changes shape exactly as it does for force-free motion, but its center follows the parabolic trajectory specified by the expectation values in (3.2.5).

Since the Hamilton operator of (3.2.1) is quadratic in P but only linear in X, the Schrödinger equation for $\langle p,t|$ will be simpler than that for $\langle x,t|$. So we turn to

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t| &= \langle p,t|\left(\frac{1}{2M}P(t)^2 - FX(t)\right)\\ &= \left(\frac{p^2}{2M} - \mathrm{i}\hbar F\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\right)\langle p,t|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.9}$$

The first step on the way to its solution is the introduction of an integrating factor on the right,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t| = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^3}{6MF}}\left(-\mathrm{i}\hbar F\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\right)\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^3}{6MF}}\langle p,t|\,, \tag{3.2.10}$$

followed by bringing the first factor over to the left and removing the common $\mathrm{i}\hbar$ factor. At this stage, we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^3}{6MF}}\langle p,t|\right) = -F\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^3}{6MF}}\langle p,t|\right). \tag{3.2.11}$$

This partial differential equation is of the simple form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}f(p,t) = -F\frac{\partial}{\partial p}f(p,t) \tag{3.2.12}$$

with the immediate solution

$$f(p,t) = g(p - Ft)\,, \tag{3.2.13}$$

where $g(\ )$ is an arbitrary single-argument function. It is linked to the initial condition at $t = t_0$ by

$$f(p,t_0) = g(p - Ft_0) \tag{3.2.14}$$

so that

$$g(p) = f(p + Ft_0, t_0) \tag{3.2.15}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} f(p,t) &= f\big((p - Ft) + Ft_0, t_0\big)\\ &= f(p - FT, t_0) \quad \text{with} \quad T = t - t_0\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.2.16}$$

Accordingly, we get

$$\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^3}{6MF}}\langle p,t| = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3}{6MF}}\langle p - FT, t_0|\,, \tag{3.2.17}$$

and then

$$\langle p,t| = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3-p^3}{6MF}}\langle p-FT,t_0| \tag{3.2.18}$$

is the solution of the Schrödinger equation (3.2.9).

We match it with $|p',t_0\rangle$ to obtain the pp time transformation function

$$\begin{aligned}\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3-p^3}{6MF}}\delta(p-FT-p')\\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p'^3-p^3}{6MF}}\delta(p-FT-p')\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.19}$$

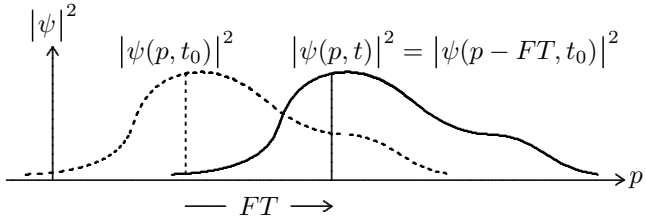
It tells us that the momentum wave function $\psi(p,t)$ is related to that at t_0 by

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(p,t) &= \int \mathrm{d}p'\,\langle p,t|p',t_0\rangle\,\psi(p',t_0)\\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3-p^3}{6MF}}\psi(p-FT,t_0)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.20}$$

which we could also have obtained by just putting the state ket $|\,\rangle$ into (3.2.18), the equation for $\langle p,t|$. We note that the phase factor disappears when we ask for probabilities,

$$\big|\psi(p,t)\big|^2 = \big|\psi(p-FT,t_0)\big|^2\,. \tag{3.2.21}$$

This relation is as it should be: the distribution as a whole is shifted by FT, the momentum transferred by the force acting for time T, without however changing the shape of the distribution, as we know already that the momentum spread does not change in time, $\delta P(t) = \delta P(t_0)$. So the picture is like this:



(3.2.22)

Next, we extract the px time transformation function

$$\begin{aligned}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3-p^3}{6MF}}\langle p-FT,t_0|x,t_0\rangle\\ &= \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(p-FT)x/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{(p-FT)^3-p^3}{6MF}}\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.23}$$

or

$$\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(p-FT)x/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{T}{2M}\left(p-\frac{1}{2}FT\right)^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{F^2T^3}{24M}}\,. \tag{3.2.24}$$

3.3 Time-dependent force

If the force is time dependent, $F = F(t)$, the Hamilton operator acquires a parametric time dependence,

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 - F(t)X\,, \tag{3.3.1}$$

but otherwise we can proceed very similarly to the constant-force case. The Heisenberg equations of motion are now

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P(t) = F(t)\,, \tag{3.3.2}$$

solved by

$$P(t) = P(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t'\,F(t')\,, \tag{3.3.3}$$

and

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X(t) = \frac{1}{M}P(t)\,, \tag{3.3.4}$$

solved by

$$\begin{aligned} X(t) &= X(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t''\,P(t'')/M \\ &= X(t_0) + \frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t_0) + \frac{1}{M}\int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t''\int_{t_0}^{t''}\mathrm{d}t'\,F(t')\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.5}$$

In this double integral, we have $t_0 < t' < t'' < t$, that is, both t' and t'' cover $t_0 \cdots t$ with $t' < t''$. Accordingly, we can interchange the order of integration if we pay due attention to the integration limits,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t''\int_{t_0}^{t''}\mathrm{d}t'\,F(t') &= \int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t'\int_{t'}^{t}\mathrm{d}t''\,F(t') \\ &= \int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t'\,(t-t')F(t')\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.6}$$

and so arrive at

$$X(t) = X(t_0) + \frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t_0) + \frac{1}{M}\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\,(t-t')F(t')\,. \tag{3.3.7}$$

Of course, one verifies easily that (3.3.4) is obeyed.

A compact way of presenting these equations is

$$\begin{aligned} P(t) &= P(t_0) + \Delta p(t,t_0)\,, \\ X(t) &= X(t_0) + \frac{t-t_0}{M}P(t_0) + \Delta x(t,t_0)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.8}$$

with

$$\Delta p(t,t_0) = \int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\,F(t') \tag{3.3.9}$$

and

$$\Delta x(t,t_0) = \frac{1}{M}\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\,(t-t')F(t')\,. \tag{3.3.10}$$

In (3.2.3), we have the constant-force expressions

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta p(t,t_0) &= FT\,, \\ \Delta x(t,t_0) &= \frac{FT^2}{2M} \quad \text{with} \quad T = t-t_0\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.11}$$

which are, of course, special cases of the more general expressions. These *purely numerical* terms do not enter the expressions of $\delta X(t)$ and $\delta P(t)$ in (3.2.8), and therefore we can conclude immediately that these relations remain true even when the force depends on time.

We illustrate another method for finding time transformation functions at the example of $\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle$. We regard it as a function of all four labels and consider infinitesimal changes of each of them. Begin with p,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle = \langle p,t\big|X(t)\big|x,t_0\rangle\,. \tag{3.3.12}$$

To proceed, we use the solutions (3.3.8) of Heisenberg's equations of motion to express $X(t)$ in terms of $P(t)$ and $X(t_0)$,

$$\begin{aligned} X(t) &= X(t_0) + \frac{T}{M}P(t_0) + \Delta x(t,t_0) \\ &= X(t_0) + \frac{T}{M}\Big(P(t) - \Delta p(t,t_0)\Big) + \Delta x(t,t_0) \\ &= X(t_0) + \frac{T}{M}P(t) + \left(\Delta x - \frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right), \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.13}$$

and then arrive at

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \left(x+\frac{T}{M}p+\left(\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right)\right)\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle \tag{3.3.14}$$

or

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\log\Big(\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle\Big) = x+\frac{T}{M}p+\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\,. \tag{3.3.15}$$

Next, the dependence on x,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \langle p,t|P(t_0)|x,t_0\rangle\,, \tag{3.3.16}$$

where $P(t_0)=P(t)-\Delta p(t,t_0)$ gives

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \big(p-\Delta p\big)\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle \tag{3.3.17}$$

or

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\log\Big(\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle\Big) = p-\Delta p\,. \tag{3.3.18}$$

Now, the dependence on t,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \langle p,t|H(t)|x,t_0\rangle \tag{3.3.19}$$

with the Hamilton operator at time t given by

$$\begin{aligned} H(t) &= \frac{1}{2M}P(t)^2 - F(t)X(t) \\ &= \frac{1}{2M}P(t)^2 - F(t)\left(X(t_0)+\frac{T}{M}P(t)+\Delta x(t,t_0)-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p(t,t_0)\right) \\ &\to \frac{p^2}{2M} - F(t)\left(x+\frac{T}{M}p+\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right), \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.20}$$

where the latter form is the numerical equivalent if bra $\langle p,t|$ and ket $|x,t_0\rangle$ are applied. So,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\log\Big(\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle\Big) = \frac{p^2}{2M} - F(t)\left(x+\frac{T}{M}p+\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right). \tag{3.3.21}$$

Finally, the dependence on t_0,

$$-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle = \langle p,t|H(t_0)|x,t_0\rangle \tag{3.3.22}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} H(t_0) &= \frac{1}{2M}P(t_0)^2 - F(t_0)X(t_0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2M}\Big(P(t) - \Delta p(t,t_0)\Big)^2 - F(t_0)X(t_0) \\ &\to \frac{1}{2M}\big(p-\Delta p\big)^2 - F(t_0)x\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.23}$$

so that

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\log\Big(\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle\Big) = -\frac{(p-\Delta p)^2}{2M} + F(t_0)x\,. \tag{3.3.24}$$

These are four differential equations for *one* function of p, x, t, and t_0. It is therefore expedient to deal with all four equations at once, which we achieve by considering the response of $\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle$ to simultaneous independent changes of all labels,

$$\delta\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle = \left(\delta x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \delta p\frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \delta t\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \delta t_0\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\right)\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle \tag{3.3.25}$$

or

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\delta\log\Big(\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle\Big) = \left(\delta x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \cdots\right)\mathrm{i}\hbar\log\Big(\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle\Big)\,. \tag{3.3.26}$$

We are thus encountering

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\delta\log\Big(\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle\Big) &= \delta p\left(x + \frac{T}{M}p + \Delta x - \frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right) \\ &\quad + \delta x\big(p-\Delta p\big) \\ &\quad + \delta t\left(\frac{p^2}{2M} - F(t)\left(x + \frac{T}{M}p + \Delta x - \frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right)\right) \\ &\quad + \delta t_0\left(-\frac{\big(p-\Delta p\big)^2}{2M} + F(t_0)x\right). \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.27}$$

Since the left-hand side is a total variation, so must be the right-hand side. Indeed it is,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\delta\log\Big(\big\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\big\rangle\Big) = \delta\left(\big(p-\Delta p\big)\left(x+\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right)+\frac{p^2T}{2M}-\hbar\Phi\right), \tag{3.3.28}$$

where

$$\Phi(t,t_0)=\frac{1}{2\hbar M}\int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t'\int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t''\,(t_>-t_0)F(t')F(t'') \tag{3.3.29}$$

with

$$t_>=\mathrm{Max}\{t',t''\}=\begin{cases}t' & \text{if} \quad t'>t'',\\ t'' & \text{if} \quad t'<t'',\end{cases} \tag{3.3.30}$$

is a force-dependent phase; see Exercise 46.

It now follows that

$$\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\exp\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(p-\Delta p)\left(x+\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right)-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{p^2T}{2M}+\mathrm{i}\Phi\right) \tag{3.3.31}$$

where the prefactor ensures the correct $t\to t_0$ limit,

$$\langle p,t\big|x,t_0\rangle\to\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}\quad\text{as } t\to t_0\,. \tag{3.3.32}$$

In the limit of vanishing force, we should get the time transformation function for force-free motion, and we do indeed inasmuch as

$$\Delta x=0\,,\quad \Delta p=0\,,\quad \Phi=0\quad\text{when}\quad F(t)=0\text{ for all }t \tag{3.3.33}$$

and the result of (3.1.5) is recovered.

3.4 Harmonic oscillator

After motion with no force, a constant force, and a time-dependent force, we now turn to the next more complicated dynamical system, that with a linear restoring force — a harmonic oscillator. Its Hamilton operator is

$$H=\frac{1}{2M}P^2+\frac{1}{2}M\omega^2X^2\,, \tag{3.4.1}$$

where ω is the circular frequency of the oscillator, and the Heisenberg equations of motion,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X&=\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[X,H]=\frac{\partial H}{\partial P}=\frac{1}{M}P\,,\\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P&=\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[P,H]=-\frac{\partial H}{\partial X}=-M\omega^2X\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.2}$$

are solved by

$$X(t) = X(t_0)\cos\big(\omega(t-t_0)\big) + \frac{1}{M\omega}P(t_0)\sin\big(\omega(t-t_0)\big)\,,$$
$$P(t) = P(t_0)\cos\big(\omega(t-t_0)\big) - M\omega X(t_0)\sin\big(\omega(t-t_0)\big)\,, \tag{3.4.3}$$

as one can show by a variety of methods, at worst by verifying that they do obey the equations of motion.

The two time variables t and t_0 appear only as their difference $t-t_0$, the elapsed time T of (3.2.4), and this is always multiplied by the frequency ω. It is therefore expedient to introduce the phase parameter

$$\phi = \omega(t-t_0) = \omega T \tag{3.4.4}$$

as a convenient abbreviation. Then, the solutions of the equations of motion read

$$X(t) = X(t_0)\cos(\phi) + \frac{1}{M\omega}P(t_0)\sin(\phi)\,,$$
$$P(t) = P(t_0)\cos(\phi) - M\omega X(t_0)\sin(\phi)\,. \tag{3.4.5}$$

For later reference, we note the commutator between position operators at different times,

$$\begin{aligned}\big[X(t),X(t_0)\big] &= \Big[X(t_0)\cos(\phi) + \frac{1}{M\omega}P(t_0)\sin(\phi), X(t_0)\Big] \\ &= -\frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.6}$$

We construct the xx time transformation function $\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle$ with the aid of the method explained at (3.3.12)–(3.3.32), for which purpose we ask for the response to infinitesimal changes of all variables, that is, x, x', t, and t_0. Begin with x and x',

$$\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \big\langle x,t\big|P(t)\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,,$$
$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x'}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \big\langle x,t\big|P(t_0)\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.7}$$

where we express $P(t)$ and $P(t_0)$, respectively, in terms of $X(t)$ and $X(t_0)$, which are the operators whose eigenbras and eigenkets are referred to in the time transformation function of present interest.

We have first

$$P(t_0) = \frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\Big(X(t) - X(t_0)\cos(\phi)\Big) \tag{3.4.8}$$

and then

$$\begin{aligned} P(t) &= \frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\Big(X(t) - X(t_0)\cos(\phi)\Big)\cos(\phi) - M\omega X(t_0)\sin(\phi) \\ &= \frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\Big(X(t)\cos(\phi) - X(t_0)\Big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.9}$$

As a consequence,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x'}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle &= \big\langle x,t\big|\frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\Big(\underset{\downarrow}{X(t)} - \underset{\downarrow}{X(t_0)}\cos(\phi)\Big)\big|x',t_0\big\rangle \\ &\qquad\qquad\quad x \qquad\quad x' \\ &= \frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\big(x - x'\cos(\phi)\big)\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.10}$$

and likewise

$$\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\big(x\cos(\phi) - x'\big)\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.11}$$

The derivative with respect to t is given by the Schrödinger equation

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \big\langle x,t\big|H(t)\big|x',t_0\big\rangle \tag{3.4.12}$$

with the Hamilton operator

$$\begin{aligned} H(t) &= \frac{1}{2M}P(t)^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X(t)^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2M}\left(\frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\Big(X(t)\cos(\phi) - X(t_0)\Big)\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X(t)^2 \\ &= \frac{M\omega^2}{2\sin(\phi)^2}\Big(X(t)^2 + X(t_0)^2 - X(t)X(t_0)\cos(\phi) \\ &\qquad\qquad - X(t_0)X(t)\cos(\phi)\Big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.13}$$

Except for the last term, all $X(t)$s are ready to be applied to $\langle x,t|$ and all $X(t_0)$s to $|x',t_0\rangle$, and this last term will be correctly ordered as soon as we take the commutator (3.4.6) into account,

$$\begin{aligned} X(t_0)X(t) &= X(t)X(t_0) - \big[X(t),X(t_0)\big] \\ &= X(t)X(t_0) + \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.14}$$

So,

$$H(t) = \frac{M\omega^2}{2\sin(\phi)^2}\bigg(X(t)^2 + X(t_0)^2 - 2X(t)X(t_0)\cos(\phi) - \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\cos(\phi)\bigg)\,, \tag{3.4.15}$$

and in the context of (3.4.12), where $H(t)$ is sandwiched by $\langle x,t|$ and $|x',t_0\rangle$, it turns into a number,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \frac{M\omega^2}{2\sin(\phi)^2}\bigg(x^2 + x'^2 - 2xx'\cos(\phi) - \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\cos(\phi)\bigg)\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.16}$$

In the time derivative with respect to t_0,

$$-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \big\langle x,t\big|H(t_0)\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.17}$$

we encounter $H(t_0)$, but that is the same as $H(t)$ because there is no parametric time dependence in the Hamilton operator. In other words, $\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle$ is not a function of t and t_0 individually but depends only on the time difference $T = t - t_0 = \phi/\omega$ so that it will be convenient to switch from t and t_0 to ϕ,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{1}{\omega}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{M\omega}{2\sin(\phi)^2}\bigg(x^2 + x'^2 - 2xx'\cos(\phi) - \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\cos(\phi)\bigg)\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.18}$$

We can now put the various pieces together and state the response of $\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle$ to simultaneous independent infinitesimal variations of x, x', and ϕ,

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\log\Big(\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\Big) &= \bigg(\delta x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \delta x'\frac{\partial}{\partial x'} + \delta\phi\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\bigg)\log\Big(\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\Big) \\ &= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\bigg(\delta x\frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\big(x\cos(\phi) - x'\big) - \delta x'\frac{M\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\big(x - x'\cos(\phi)\big) \\ &\qquad - \delta\phi\frac{M\omega}{2\sin(\phi)^2}\bigg(x^2 + x'^2 - 2xx'\cos(\phi) - \frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega}\sin(\phi)\cos(\phi)\bigg)\bigg)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.19}$$

We recognize a total variation on the right,

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\log\Big(\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle\Big) &= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta\bigg(\frac{M\omega}{2}(x^2+x'^2)\frac{\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)} - M\omega xx'\frac{1}{\sin(\phi)} \\ &\qquad + \mathrm{i}\hbar\log\Big(\sqrt{\sin(\phi)}\Big)\bigg) \\ &= \delta\bigg(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega}{2}(x^2+x'^2)\frac{\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)} - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega xx'}{\sin(\phi)} \\ &\qquad - \log\Big(\sqrt{\sin(\phi)}\Big)\bigg)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.20}$$

It follows that $\log\big(\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle\big)$ differs from $\Big(\cdots\Big)$ at most by an additive constant (meaning that it does not depend on x, x', or ϕ) so that there is a multiplicative constant in

$$\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \frac{(\text{constant})}{\sqrt{\sin(\phi)}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega}{2}(x^2+x'^2)\frac{\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)} - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega xx'}{\sin(\phi)}}\,. \tag{3.4.21}$$

We can determine the value of the constant by considering the $\omega\to 0$ limit of force-free motion, when

$$\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle \to \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar T}}\;\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}\frac{(x-x')^2}{T}} \quad \text{as } \omega\to 0\,. \tag{3.4.22}$$

Since $\dfrac{\omega}{\sin(\phi)}\to\dfrac{1}{T}$ and $\omega\dfrac{\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)}\to\dfrac{1}{T}$, the exponential factor in (3.4.21) has the correct limit all by itself, and the choice

$$\frac{(\text{constant})}{\sqrt{\sin(\phi)}} = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar\sin(\phi)}} \tag{3.4.23}$$

ensures the correct limit of the prefactor. In summary, then, we have established that

$$\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar\sin(\phi)}}\;\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega}{2\tan(\phi)}(x^2+x'^2) - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M\omega xx'}{\sin(\phi)}} \tag{3.4.24}$$

is the xx time transformation function for the harmonic oscillator.

In the limit $\omega\to 0$, the difference $x-x'$ is all that matters. We take this as a hint that it may be useful to express $\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle$ in terms of $x-x'$ and $x+x'$. The identities

$$x^2+x'^2 = \frac{1}{2}(x-x')^2 + \frac{1}{2}(x+x')^2 \tag{3.4.25}$$

and

$$xx' = -\frac{1}{4}(x-x')^2 + \frac{1}{4}(x+x')^2 \tag{3.4.26}$$

are then used to rewrite the argument of the exponential function,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{M\omega}{2\tan(\phi)}(x^2+x'^2) - \frac{M\omega xx'}{\sin(\phi)} \\
&= \frac{M\omega}{4\tan(\phi)}\Big((x-x')^2+(x+x')^2\Big) + \frac{M\omega}{4\sin(\phi)}\Big((x-x')^2-(x+x')^2\Big) \\
&= \frac{M\omega}{4\sin(\phi)}\Big(\big(1+\cos(\phi)\big)(x-x')^2 - \big(1-\cos(\phi)\big)(x+x')^2\Big) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}M\omega\left[(x-x')^2\cot\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) - (x+x')^2\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right],
\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.27}$$

where the last step exploits the trigonometric identities

$$\frac{1+\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)} = \cot\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right), \qquad \frac{1-\cos(\phi)}{\sin(\phi)} = \tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right). \tag{3.4.28}$$

Accordingly,

$$\begin{aligned}
\big\langle x,t\big|x',t_0\big\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar\sin(\phi)}}\ &\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}(x-x')^2\frac{\omega}{2}\cot\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)} \\
&\times\ \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2}(x+x')^2\frac{\omega}{2}\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)},
\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.29}$$

where the $\omega \to 0$ limit is immediate inasmuch as $(T = t - t_0 = \phi/\omega)$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\omega}{2}\cot\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{T}\frac{\phi}{2}\cot\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \to \frac{1}{T} \\
\text{and}\quad &\frac{\omega}{2}\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{T}\frac{\phi}{2}\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \to 0 \quad \text{as } \phi \to 0\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.30}$$

We note that the short-time limit $T \to 0$ and the no-force limit $\omega \to 0$ are both tantamount to $\phi \to 0$; these limits are essentially the same. This is as it should be, because a force needs time to act to make itself felt, so that at very short times no effect of the force should be expected.

3.4.1 *Ladder operators*

The Heisenberg equations of motion for the harmonic oscillator,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X = \frac{1}{M}P\,, \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P = -M\omega^2 X\,, \tag{3.4.31}$$

can be combined into

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P) = -\mathrm{i}\omega(M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P) \tag{3.4.32}$$

or its adjoint

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P) = \mathrm{i}\omega(M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P)\,, \tag{3.4.33}$$

which are simple uncoupled equations of motion for the nonhermitian operators $M\omega X \pm \mathrm{i}P$ that are fully equivalent to the pair of coupled equations of motion for the hermitian operators X and P. This simplification suggests strongly that also the Hamilton operator

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 = \frac{1}{2M}\Big[(M\omega X)^2 + P^2\Big] \tag{3.4.34}$$

will look simpler if expressed in terms of these nonhermitian combinations of X and P. Indeed, if X and P were numbers, we would just have

$$(M\omega X)^2 + P^2 = (M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P)(M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P)\,, \tag{3.4.35}$$

but this is *not correct for operators* because the right-hand side differs from the left-hand side by an additional term, namely

$$(M\omega X)(-\mathrm{i}P) + (\mathrm{i}P)(M\omega X) = -\mathrm{i}M\omega \underbrace{[X,P]}_{=\mathrm{i}\hbar} = M\hbar\omega\,. \tag{3.4.36}$$

Let us, therefore, be more systematic about this matter and take a look at the commutator

$$\begin{aligned}[M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P, M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P] &= -\mathrm{i}M\omega \underbrace{[X,P]}_{=\mathrm{i}\hbar} + \mathrm{i}M\omega \underbrace{[P,X]}_{=-\mathrm{i}\hbar} \\ &= 2M\hbar\omega\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.37}$$

It invites the definition of dimensionless nonhermitian operators

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2M\hbar\omega}}(M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P)\,, \\ A^\dagger &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2M\hbar\omega}}(M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P) \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.38}$$

or, with

$$l = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{M\omega}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\hbar}{l} = \sqrt{M\hbar\omega}\,, \tag{3.4.39}$$

which identify the length scale and the momentum scale of the harmonic oscillator,

$$A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(X/l + \mathrm{i}P\Big/\frac{\hbar}{l}\right),$$
$$A^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(X/l - \mathrm{i}P\Big/\frac{\hbar}{l}\right). \tag{3.4.40}$$

Solved for X and P, they appear as

$$X = l\,\frac{A + A^\dagger}{\sqrt{2}}\,, \qquad P = \frac{\hbar}{l}\,\frac{\mathrm{i}A^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A}{\sqrt{2}}\,, \tag{3.4.41}$$

which confirm that, in a manner of speaking, X is essentially the real part of A and P the imaginary part.

Turning to the Hamilton operator, we note that

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\underbrace{\left(\frac{\hbar}{l}\right)^2\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}A^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2}_{=P^2} + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2\,\underbrace{l^2\left(\frac{A + A^\dagger}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2}_{=X^2}$$
$$= \frac{1}{4}\hbar\omega\Big(-\big(A^\dagger - A\big)^2 + \big(A + A^\dagger\big)^2\Big) \tag{3.4.42}$$

or

$$H = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega\big(A^\dagger A + AA^\dagger\big)\,. \tag{3.4.43}$$

This simplifies further as soon as we note that the fundamental commutator

$$\big[A, A^\dagger\big] = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{X}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{P}{\hbar/l}, \frac{X}{l} - \mathrm{i}\frac{P}{\hbar/l}\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\hbar}\Big(\underbrace{[X, -\mathrm{i}P]}_{=\hbar} + \underbrace{[\mathrm{i}P, X]}_{=\hbar}\Big) = 1\,, \tag{3.4.44}$$

that is simply

$$\big[A, A^\dagger\big] = 1\,, \tag{3.4.45}$$

enables us to express $AA^\dagger$ in terms of $A^\dagger A$,

$$AA^\dagger = A^\dagger A + 1\,, \tag{3.4.46}$$

so that

$$H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A + \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega\,. \tag{3.4.47}$$

Recalling the lesson of Section 3.3 in *Basic Matters*, we note that the additive constant $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$ is of no real physical significance, inasmuch as it is completely irrelevant in the Heisenberg equation of motion (2.1.39),

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}F = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}F + \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[F, H]\,. \tag{3.4.48}$$

We can, therefore, simplify matters by dropping the $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$ term,

$$H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A + \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega \to \hbar\omega A^\dagger A \tag{3.4.49}$$

or

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 \to \frac{1}{2M}(M\omega X - \mathrm{i}P)(M\omega X + \mathrm{i}P)\,. \tag{3.4.50}$$

The new, slightly simplified, Hamilton operator is still a positive quantity — as is, of course, the original sum of squares — because all its expectation values are nonnegative,

$$\langle H\rangle = \big\langle\ \big|H\big|\ \big\rangle = \hbar\omega \underbrace{\big\langle\ \big|A^\dagger A\big|\ \big\rangle}_{\substack{\text{squared length}\\ \text{of ket } A\big|\ \big\rangle}} \geq 0\,. \tag{3.4.51}$$

It follows that

$$\left\langle \frac{P^2}{2M} + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 \right\rangle \geq \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega \tag{3.4.52}$$

holds for the original Hamilton operator.

In these equations, the equal sign would apply to a ket that is an eigenket of A with the eigenvalue 0,

$$A\big|0\big\rangle = \big|0\big\rangle 0 = 0\,. \tag{3.4.53}$$

The adjoint statement

$$\big\langle 0\big|A^\dagger = 0\big\langle 0\big| = 0 \tag{3.4.54}$$

identifies $\langle 0|$ as the eigenbra of $A^\dagger$ with the eigenvalue 0. Is there such an eigenket of A?

We answer this question by looking for its wave function $\langle x|0\rangle = \psi_0(x)$,

$$0 = \big\langle x\big|A\big|0\big\rangle = \big\langle x\big|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{X}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{l}{\hbar}P\right)\big|0\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{x}{l} + l\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)\big\langle x\big|0\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.55}$$

which states that

$$l\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\psi_0(x) = -\frac{x}{l}\psi_0(x)\,. \tag{3.4.56}$$

This differential equation is solved by

$$\langle x|0\rangle = \psi_0(x) = \pi^{-1/4}l^{-1/2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x/l)^2}, \tag{3.4.57}$$

where we find the normalizing prefactor by a comparison with the known form of gaussian minimum-uncertainty wave functions in (3.1.19). In passing, we establish that the position spread of $\psi_0(x)$ is

$$\delta X = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}l = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2M\omega}} \tag{3.4.58}$$

and the momentum spread is then

$$\delta P = \frac{\hbar/2}{\delta X} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{\hbar}{l} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\hbar M\omega}\,. \tag{3.4.59}$$

Since

$$H|0\rangle = \hbar\omega A^\dagger \underbrace{A|0\rangle}_{=0} = 0\,, \tag{3.4.60}$$

we thus note that the ground state of the harmonic oscillator, the state with the lowest possible energy, is a minimum-uncertainty state with these spreads in position and momentum. It is in this sense that l sets the length scale for the harmonic oscillator and $\hbar/l$ sets the momentum scale. We note further that $\hbar\omega$ is clearly the natural unit of energy.

The latter observation is reinforced by noting that

$$\big(A^\dagger A\big)A^\dagger|0\rangle = A^\dagger\big(AA^\dagger\big)|0\rangle = A^\dagger\big(A^\dagger A + 1\big)|0\rangle = A^\dagger|0\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.61}$$

which states that $A^\dagger|0\rangle$ is the eigenket of $A^\dagger A$ with the eigenvalue 1. It is, therefore, the eigenket of the Hamilton operator $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$ with eigenvalue $\hbar\omega$.

We repeat this game,

$$\begin{aligned}\big(A^\dagger A\big){A^\dagger}^2|0\rangle &= A^\dagger\big(AA^\dagger\big)A^\dagger|0\rangle \\ &= A^\dagger\big(\underbrace{A^\dagger A}_{\to 1}+1\big)A^\dagger|0\rangle = {A^\dagger}^2|0\rangle 2\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.62}$$

stating that ${A^\dagger}^2|0\rangle$ is the eigenket of $A^\dagger A$ with the eigenvalue 2, and so forth by induction. We conclude that ${A^\dagger}^n|0\rangle$ is the eigenket of $A^\dagger A$ with the eigenvalue n and verify the induction step:

$$\begin{aligned}\big(A^\dagger A\big){A^\dagger}^{n+1}\big|0\big\rangle &= A^\dagger(AA^\dagger){A^\dagger}^n\big|0\big\rangle \\ &= A^\dagger\big(\underbrace{A^\dagger A}_{\to n}+1\big){A^\dagger}^n\big|0\big\rangle = {A^\dagger}^{n+1}\big|0\big\rangle(n+1)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.63}$$

indeed.

We want to have normalized eigenkets of $A^\dagger A$, and thus of $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$, and so we need to establish the lengths of the kets ${A^\dagger}^n|0\rangle$. We multiply by bra $\langle 0|A^n = \big({A^\dagger}^n|0\rangle\big)^\dagger$,

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle 0\big|A^n{A^\dagger}^n\big|0\big\rangle &= \big\langle 0\big|A^{n-1}\underbrace{\big(AA^\dagger\big)}_{\substack{=A^\dagger A+1\,\to\,(n-1)+1=n}}{A^\dagger}^{n-1}\big|0\big\rangle \\ &= n\big\langle 0\big|A^{n-1}{A^\dagger}^{n-1}\big|0\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.64}$$

and by repeating this step $(n-1)$ more times,

$$\big\langle 0\big|A^n{A^\dagger}^n\big|0\big\rangle = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 2\cdot 1\underbrace{\big\langle 0\big|0\big\rangle}_{=1} = n!\,, \tag{3.4.65}$$

so that

$$\big|n\big\rangle = \frac{{A^\dagger}^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\big|0\big\rangle\,,\quad n=0,1,2,\ldots \tag{3.4.66}$$

and

$$\big\langle n\big| = \big\langle 0\big|\frac{A^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\,,\quad n=0,1,2,\ldots \tag{3.4.67}$$

are the normalized eigenkets and eigenbras of $A^\dagger A$ and thus of $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$,

$$A^\dagger A\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n\big\rangle n\,,\quad H\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n\big\rangle\hbar\omega n\,. \tag{3.4.68}$$

Part and parcel of the above construction are the relations

$$\begin{aligned} A^\dagger\big|n\big\rangle &= \big|n+1\big\rangle\sqrt{n+1}\,, & \big\langle n\big|A &= \sqrt{n+1}\,\big\langle n+1\big|\,, \\ A\big|n\big\rangle &= \big|n-1\big\rangle\sqrt{n}\,, & \big\langle n\big|A^\dagger &= \sqrt{n}\,\big\langle n-1\big|\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.69}$$

which are the reasons why the operators A and $A^\dagger$ are called *ladder operators*: they take us up and down the ladder of $|n\rangle$ kets and $\langle n|$ bras from $n=0$ to $n=1,2,\ldots$, rung by rung.

Could it be that $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$ has some other eigenkets in addition to these just found? No, this is impossible as we see by *assuming* that there is some eigenket $|E\rangle$, $H|E\rangle = |E\rangle E$, with an eigenvalue $E \neq n\hbar\omega$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} HA\big|E\big\rangle &= \hbar\omega A^\dagger AA\big|E\big\rangle = \hbar\omega(AA^\dagger - 1)A\big|E\big\rangle \\ &= A\underbrace{\hbar\omega A^\dagger A\big|E\big\rangle}_{=|E\rangle E} - \hbar\omega A\big|E\big\rangle = A\big|E\big\rangle(E - \hbar\omega) \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.70}$$

states that $A|E\rangle$ is also the eigenket of H with the eigenvalue $E - \hbar\omega$. But then it follows that $A^2|E\rangle$ is eigenket with eigenvalue $E - 2\hbar\omega$ and so forth, eventually getting a negative eigenvalue. But that cannot be because all expectation values of H are nonnegative, as established in (3.4.51). In short, the assumption has an absurd consequence and so cannot be true.

3.4.2 *Coherent states*

We have found the eigenkets and bras of $A^\dagger A$, the so-called *Fock* states* $|n\rangle$ and $\langle n|$, but in fact it all began with a search for an eigenket of the ladder operator A, with eigenvalue $A|0\rangle = 0$. How about other eigenvalues?

We try

$$A\big|a\big\rangle = \big|a\big\rangle a\,, \quad \text{where } a \text{ is some } \textit{complex} \text{ number}, \tag{3.4.71}$$

since the nonhermitian character of A suggests that its eigenvalues might be complex rather than real. Again, we look for the position wave function $\langle x|a\rangle$,

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle x\big|A\big|a\big\rangle &= \big\langle x\big|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{X}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{lP}{\hbar}\right)\big|a\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{x}{l} + l\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right)\big\langle x\big|a\big\rangle = \big\langle x\big|a\big\rangle a\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.72}$$

or

$$l\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big\langle x\big|a\big\rangle = \left(-\frac{x}{l} + \sqrt{2}a\right)\big\langle x\big|a\big\rangle \tag{3.4.73}$$

so that

$$\big\langle x\big|a\big\rangle = \pi^{-1/4}l^{-1/2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x/l)^2 + \sqrt{2}\,(x/l)\,a - \frac{1}{2}a^2}\,, \tag{3.4.74}$$

---

*Vladimir Alexandrovich FOCK (1898–1974)

where the normalizing factor $\pi^{-1/4}l^{-1/2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}a^2}$ is that of $\langle x|0\rangle$ in (3.4.57) when $a=0$ and adopts a particular convention that we shall now explain.

For this purpose, let us note that the commutation relations

$$\big[X,P\big]=\mathrm{i}\hbar\,,\qquad \big[A,A^\dagger\big]=1 \tag{3.4.75}$$

turn into each other under the replacements

$$X\to lA\,,\qquad P\to \mathrm{i}\frac{\hbar}{l}A^\dagger\,. \tag{3.4.76}$$

Indeed, (almost) any correct statement about X and P becomes a correct statement about A and $A^\dagger$ by these replacements, and *vice versa*. In particular, the differentiation rules

$$\begin{aligned}\big[X,f(X,P)\big]&=\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial P}f(X,P)\,,\\ \big[f(X,P),P\big]&=\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial X}f(X,P)\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.77}$$

have the analogs

$$\begin{aligned}\big[A,f(A^\dagger,A)\big]&=\frac{\partial}{\partial A^\dagger}f(A^\dagger,A)\,,\\ \big[f(A^\dagger,A),A^\dagger\big]&=\frac{\partial}{\partial A}f(A^\dagger,A)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.78}$$

And so we want, for example, that

$$P\big|x\big\rangle=\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big|x\big\rangle \tag{3.4.79}$$

has the analog

$$A^\dagger\big|a\big\rangle=\frac{\partial}{\partial a}\big|a\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.80}$$

The factor $\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}a^2}$ in (3.4.74) ensures this.

In addition, we wish that

$$\big\langle p\big|x\big\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\exp\left(\left(\frac{lp}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\right)\left(\frac{x}{l}\right)\right) \tag{3.4.81}$$

has the analog

$$\big\langle a^*\big|a'\big\rangle=\mathrm{e}^{a^*a'}, \tag{3.4.82}$$

where

$$\langle a^* | = |a\rangle^\dagger \quad \text{with} \quad a^* = \text{complex conjugate of } a \tag{3.4.83}$$

is the eigenbra of $A^\dagger$ with eigenvalue a^*,

$$\langle a^* | A^\dagger = a^* \langle a^* | \,, \tag{3.4.84}$$

that obtains from the eigenket $|a\rangle$ of A by taking the adjoint. There is no trace of the $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}$ factor in (3.4.82), partly for simplicity and partly by convention but mainly because we have earlier chosen to normalize $|0\rangle$ in accordance with $\langle 0|0\rangle = 1$.

To verify the statement about $\langle a^*|a'\rangle$, we first note that

$$\langle a^* | x\rangle = \langle x|a\rangle^\dagger = \pi^{-1/4} l^{-1/2}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}a^{*2} + \sqrt{2}\, a^* (x/l) - \frac{1}{2}(x/l)^2} \tag{3.4.85}$$

and then exploit the completeness of the x states in

$$\begin{aligned} \langle a^* | a'\rangle &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, \langle a^*|x\rangle\langle x|a'\rangle \\ &= \pi^{-1/2} l^{-1} \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}a^{*2} + \sqrt{2}\,(a^* + a')(x/l) - (x/l)^2 - \frac{1}{2}a'^2} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(a^{*2} + a'^2)}\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(a^* + a')^2} = \mathrm{e}^{a^* a'} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.86}$$

where we recognize another gaussian integration.

As we have seen, there is a wealth of analogy between the hermitian pair X, P and the nonhermitian pair $A, A^\dagger$. How far does it go? Quite far, in fact, but it stops when we want to extend

$$|x\rangle \leftrightarrow |a\rangle \,, \qquad \langle p| \leftrightarrow \langle a^*| \qquad \text{(alright)} \tag{3.4.87}$$

to

$$\langle x| \leftrightarrow \langle a| \,, \qquad |p\rangle \leftrightarrow |a^*\rangle \qquad \text{(not alright)} \tag{3.4.88}$$

because the ladder operator A has *no* eigenbras and the ladder operator $A^\dagger$ has *no* eigenkets.

To make this point, assume an eigenbra $\langle a|$ of A and look at the $\langle a|x\rangle$ wave function. It would have to obey the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} a\langle a|x\rangle = \langle a|A|x\rangle &= \langle a| \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(\frac{X}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{lP}{\hbar} \right) |x\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(\frac{x}{l} - l\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right) \langle a|x\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.89}$$

so that

$$\langle a|x\rangle \propto \mathrm{e}^{\sqrt{2}\,a\,(x/l)\,+\,\frac{1}{2}(x/l)^2} \tag{3.4.90}$$

and

$$\int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\langle a|x\rangle\big|^2 = \infty\,, \tag{3.4.91}$$

which tells us that there is no such $\langle a|$.

With $|a\rangle$ being a function of the complex variable a, a function that can be differentiated,

$$A^\dagger|a\rangle = \frac{\partial}{\partial a}|a\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.92}$$

complex analysis tells us that $|a\rangle$ is an *entire function*, that is, a function that is analytic in the entire complex plane, which is of course a very restricted class of complex functions. The same applies to $\langle a^*|$, which is an entire function of a^*, and brackets such as

$$\langle a^*|a'\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{a^*a'} \tag{3.4.93}$$

are, quite obviously, entire functions in both complex arguments.

Accordingly, given an operator function $F(A^\dagger, A)$ of $A^\dagger$ and A, the mixed matrix element

$$\langle a^*|F(A^\dagger, A)|a'\rangle \tag{3.4.94}$$

is entire as a function of a' and also as a function of a^*. Upon multiplication with $\mathrm{e}^{-a^*a'}$, we conclude that

$$\frac{\langle a^*|F(A^\dagger, A)|a'\rangle}{\langle a^*|a'\rangle} = f(a^*, a') \tag{3.4.95}$$

is analytical everywhere both in a^* and in a'. Since $f(A^\dagger; A)$ is clearly the $A^\dagger, A$-ordered version of F, it follows that all operators can be written in an $A^\dagger, A$-ordered form and that this *normally ordered* form of F must be entire in $A^\dagger$ and in A. We have occasionally spoken of "reasonable functions" of X, P or other operators and have now found a clear criterion for judging what is "reasonable:" the normally ordered function is entire in $A^\dagger$ and A. Normal ordering can be a powerful tool, as is illustrated by Exercise 58.

This possibility of normal ordering relies on the existence of eigenbras of $A^\dagger$ and eigenkets of A, and so there is no reason why one should be able to put any arbitrary operator into an $A, A^\dagger$-ordered form. Indeed, this

antinormal ordering cannot be done for arbitrary operators, if they involve infinitely many As and infinitely many $A^\dagger$s.

The kets $|a\rangle$ and bras $\langle a^*|$ are known as Glauber's* *coherent states*. The conventions we use, in particular the bracket in (3.4.93) rather than normalizing the coherent states to unit length, have been promoted by Bargmann,† Segal,‡ Schwinger,§ and others.

3.4.3 *Completeness of the coherent states*

While any two coherent states are not orthogonal as $\langle a^*|a'\rangle \neq 0$ in(3.4.93), the coherent states are complete. In fact, they are overcomplete, which is to say that there is more than one completeness relation, or equivalently, that subsets of these states are already complete.

We recall the completeness relations for the x and p states and combine them such that we only have a $|p\rangle$ bra and a $\langle x|$ ket in the end, as they have $|a\rangle$ and $\langle a^*|$ as analogs:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x\rangle\langle x| \int \mathrm{d}p\, |p\rangle\langle p| \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p\, |x\rangle \underbrace{\langle x|p\rangle}_{= \left(2\pi\hbar\langle p|x\rangle\right)^{-1}} \langle p| \\ &= \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{|x\rangle\langle p|}{\langle p|x\rangle}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.96}$$

and thus conjecture that the completeness relation of the coherent states $\big|a\big\rangle$ and $\big\langle a^*\big|$ should appear as

$$1 = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{|a'\rangle\langle a^*|}{\langle a^*|a'\rangle}\bigg|_{\substack{\text{suitable}\\ \text{parameterization}}} . \tag{3.4.97}$$

The "suitable parameterization" is the injunction for relating the complex numbers a' and a^* to the real integration parameters x and p. There is, in fact, a plethora of possible parameterizations, they are all equally good on general grounds, but very often one is much more convenient than others for a particular application. The two most important, and most frequently

*Roy Jay Glauber (1925–2018) †Valentine Bargmann (1908–1989)
‡Irving Ezra Segal (1918–1998) §Julian Schwinger (1918–1994)

used, parameterizations are

$$a' = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{x}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{lp}{\hbar}\right),$$
$$a^* = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{x}{l} - \mathrm{i}\frac{lp}{\hbar}\right) = a'^*, \tag{3.4.98}$$

and

$$a' = \frac{x}{l}, \qquad a^* = -\mathrm{i}\frac{lp}{\hbar}. \tag{3.4.99}$$

The parameterization (3.4.98) is suggested by the basic relations (3.4.40) between A, $A^\dagger$ and X, P, whereas the parameterization (3.4.99) is suggested by the useful analogy of (3.4.76). Yet another parameterization is the subject matter of Exercise 66.

When using the parameterization (3.4.98), all eigenkets of A and all eigenbras of $A^\dagger$ contribute to the integral in (3.4.97). By contrast, if we employ the parameterization (3.4.99), only the eigenkets of A with real eigenvalues and the eigenbras of $A^\dagger$ with imaginary eigenvalues appear in the completeness relation. This implies that these subsets of kets and bras are already complete, and the whole set is overcomplete. Indeed, since $|a\rangle$ and $\langle a^*|$ are entire functions of their complex arguments, there are many subsets that are complete; among them are subsets that are countable.

We leave the verification of parameterization (3.4.98) to Exercise 63, and demonstrate the parameterization (3.4.99) here by evaluating

$$\delta(x' - x'') = \langle x'|x''\rangle \stackrel{?}{=} \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{\langle x'|a'\rangle\langle a^*|x''\rangle}{\langle a^*|a'\rangle}\bigg|_{\substack{a' = x/l \\ a^* = -ilp/\hbar}}. \tag{3.4.100}$$

The wave functions in (3.4.74) and (3.4.82) give

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\langle x'|a'\rangle\langle a^*|x''\rangle}{\langle a^*|a'\rangle} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}\,l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x'^2 + x''^2)/l^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\sqrt{2}(x'a' + a^*x'')/l} \\ &\quad \times \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}a'^2 - \frac{1}{2}a^{*2}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-a^*a'} \\ &\underset{a' = x/l,\ a^* = -\mathrm{i}lp/\hbar}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}\,l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x'^2 + x''^2)/l^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\sqrt{2}\,(x'x/l^2 - \mathrm{i}x''p/\hbar)} \\ &\quad \times \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x/l)^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(lp/\hbar)^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.101}$$

so that, upon evaluating the gaussian x integral, we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned}\delta(x'-x'') &\stackrel{?}{=} \sqrt{2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x'^2-x''^2)/l^2}\underbrace{\int\frac{\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\sqrt{2}\,(x'-x'')p/\hbar}}_{=\delta(x'-x'')/\sqrt{2}}\\ &= \delta\big(x'-x''\big)\underbrace{\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(x'^2-x''^2)/l^2}}_{=1\quad\text{for}\quad x'=x''}\\ &= \delta(x'-x'')\,, \end{aligned}\tag{3.4.102}$$

indeed.

3.4.4 *Fock states and coherent states*

The Fock-state ket for $n=0$ and the coherent-state ket for $a=0$ are the same, $|0\rangle = |n=0\rangle = |a=0\rangle$. By combining (3.4.67) with (3.4.71) and (3.4.82) we can, therefore, infer immediately that the Fock states $|n\rangle$ and the coherent states $|a\rangle$ are related to each other by

$$\big\langle n\big|a\big\rangle = \big\langle 0\big|\frac{A^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\big|a\big\rangle = \big\langle 0\big|a\big\rangle\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}} = \frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\tag{3.4.103}$$

or

$$\big|a\big\rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\big|n\big\rangle\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\,,\tag{3.4.104}$$

which states that the coherent states constitute the generating function for the Fock states. This is demonstrated easily by verifying the basic eigenstate relation $A|a\rangle = |a\rangle a$,

$$\begin{aligned}A\big|a\big\rangle &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}A\big|n\big\rangle\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\big|n-1\big\rangle\sqrt{n}\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\big|n\big\rangle\frac{a^{n+1}}{\sqrt{n!}} = \big|a\big\rangle a\,,\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.105}$$

and the differential relation $A^\dagger|a\rangle = \dfrac{\partial}{\partial a}|a\rangle$,

$$A^\dagger\big|a\big\rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}A^\dagger\big|n\big\rangle\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\big|n+1\big\rangle\sqrt{n+1}\frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \big|n+1\big\rangle \frac{\partial}{\partial a} \frac{a^{n+1}}{\sqrt{(n+1)!}} = \frac{\partial}{\partial a} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \big|n\big\rangle \frac{a^n}{\sqrt{n!}} = \frac{\partial}{\partial a} \big|a\big\rangle \,, \quad (3.4.106)$$

as well as the normalization $\langle a^* | a' \rangle = \mathrm{e}^{a^* a'}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle a^* \big| a' \big\rangle &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}} \langle n| \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} |m\rangle \frac{a'^m}{\sqrt{m!}} \\ &= \sum_{n,m=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n} a'^m}{\sqrt{n!\,m!}} \underbrace{\langle n|m\rangle}_{=\delta_{n,m}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n} a'^n}{n!} = \mathrm{e}^{a^* a'} \,. \end{aligned} \quad (3.4.107)$$

All three confirm that (3.4.104) is correct.

3.4.5 *Time dependence*

The introduction of the nonhermitian operators of A and $A^\dagger$ in Section 3.4.1 was mainly motivated by the simplicity of their Heisenberg equations of motion,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} A(t) = -\mathrm{i}\omega A(t) \,, \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} A^\dagger(t) = \mathrm{i}\omega A^\dagger(t) \,, \quad (3.4.108)$$

which are solved by

$$\begin{aligned} A(t) &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)} A(t_0) \,, \\ A^\dagger(t_0) &= A^\dagger(t)\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)} \,, \end{aligned} \quad (3.4.109)$$

respectively. In the latter, we have chosen to express $A^\dagger$ at the earlier time t_0 by $A^\dagger$ at the later time t, rather than the other way around, because this is what we need in the variation

$$\delta\big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle = \left(\delta a^* \frac{\partial}{\partial a^*} + \delta a' \frac{\partial}{\partial a'} + \delta t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \delta t_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial t_0} \right) \big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle \quad (3.4.110)$$

of the time transformation function between coherent states. For, here

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial a^*} \big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle &= \big\langle a^*, t \big| A(t) \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)} a' \big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle \,, \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial a'} \big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle &= \big\langle a^*, t \big| A^\dagger(t_0) \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle \\ &= a^* \,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)} \big\langle a^*, t \big| a', t_0 \big\rangle \,, \end{aligned} \quad (3.4.111)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t_0}\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big\langle a^*,t\big|H\big|a',t_0\big\rangle$$
$$= -\mathrm{i}\omega a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a'\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.112}$$

where the relations (3.4.109) as well as their implication

$$H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger(t)A(t) = \hbar\omega A^\dagger(t)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}A(t_0) \tag{3.4.113}$$

are used. Upon putting the ingredients together, we have

$$\delta\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle = \Big(\delta a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a' + a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}\delta a' \tag{3.4.114}$$
$$+ (\delta t-\delta t_0)(-\mathrm{i}\omega)a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a'\Big)\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle\,,$$

or after dividing by $\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle$,

$$\delta\log\Big(\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle\Big) = \delta\Big(a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a'\Big)\,. \tag{3.4.115}$$

It follows that

$$\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a'}\,, \tag{3.4.116}$$

where we have already identified correctly the multiplicative constant of integration such that the initial condition

$$\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle \to \mathrm{e}^{a^*a'} \quad \text{as } t\to t_0 \tag{3.4.117}$$

is obeyed.

We have thus found the time transformation function that relates eigenkets of $A(t_0)$ to eigenbras of $A^\dagger(t)$. In conjunction with either one of the completeness relations of the form (3.4.97), it enables us to find $\langle a^*,t|\,\rangle$ if $\langle a^*,t_0|\,\rangle$ is given. In fact, we do not even need to exploit any detailed completeness relations because

$$\big\langle a^*,t\big|a',t_0\big\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}a'}$$
$$= \mathrm{e}^{\left(a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}\right)a'}$$
$$= \big\langle a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)},t_0\big|a',t_0\big\rangle \tag{3.4.118}$$

so that, as a consequence of the completeness of the a' kets,

$$\big\langle a^*,t\big| = \big\langle a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)},t_0\big|\,. \tag{3.4.119}$$

Therefore, if we know

$$\psi(a^*, t_0) = \big\langle a^*, t_0 \big| \, \big\rangle \,, \tag{3.4.120}$$

then $\psi(a^*, t) = \langle a^*, t| \, \rangle$ is immediately given by

$$\psi(a^*, t) = \psi\big(a^* \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t - t_0)}, t_0\big) \,. \tag{3.4.121}$$

Tersely: The quantum number a^* acquires an additional complex phase factor $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t - t_0)}$, and that is *all*.

There are, of course, various ways of getting this result. For example, we could begin with first noting that the Schrödinger equation

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \big\langle \ldots, t \big| = \big\langle \ldots, t \big| H \tag{3.4.122}$$

is formally solved by

$$\big\langle \ldots, t \big| = \big\langle \ldots, t_0 \big| \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t - t_0)H} \tag{3.4.123}$$

provided that there is no parametric time dependence in the Hamilton operator, $\dfrac{\partial H}{\partial t} = 0$. Because then it follows that $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}H}{\mathrm{d}t} = 0$ so that there is one and the same Hamilton operator at all times. The eigenbras of H itself,

$$\big\langle E \big| H = E \big\langle E \big| \,, \tag{3.4.124}$$

then have a particularly simple time dependence,

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle E, t \big| &= \big\langle E, t_0 \big| \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t - t_0)H} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t - t_0)E} \big\langle E, t_0 \big| \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.125}$$

that is, their time dependence is simply an energy-dependent phase factor.

In the present context of a harmonic oscillator, $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$, the energy states are the Fock states, $\big\langle E \big| = \big\langle n \big|$ with $E = n\hbar\omega$, and we have

$$\big\langle n, t \big| = \big\langle n, t_0 \big| \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t - t_0)A^\dagger A} \,, \tag{3.4.126}$$

where

$$A^\dagger A = A^\dagger(t) A(t) = A^\dagger(t_0) A(t_0) \tag{3.4.127}$$

does not depend on time. Thus,

$$\big\langle n, t \big| = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}n\omega(t - t_0)} \big\langle n, t_0 \big| \,. \tag{3.4.128}$$

We combine it with the equal-time statement

$$\langle a^* | = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}} \langle n | \tag{3.4.129}$$

to get

$$\begin{aligned} \langle a^*, t | &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}} \langle n, t | = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}n\omega(t-t_0)} \langle n, t_0 | \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\left(a^* \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}\right)^n}{\sqrt{n!}} \langle n, t_0 | = \langle a^* \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t-t_0)}, t_0 | \,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.130}$$

thereby reproducing (3.4.119).

In this line of reasoning, we exploit our prior knowledge of the eigenvalues and eigenbras of the Hamilton operator but, in fact, all this information is contained in the time transformation functions $\langle \ldots, t | \ldots, t_0 \rangle$ between some complete set of kets and a complete set of bras. To see the general picture, we consider

$$\langle \alpha, t | \beta, t_0 \rangle = \langle \alpha, t_0 | \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)H} | \beta, t_0 \rangle \tag{3.4.131}$$

with some generic sets of quantum numbers α, β and some time-independent Hamilton operator H. We use the eigenstates of H,

$$H | E \rangle = | E \rangle E, \tag{3.4.132}$$

to write

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)H} = \sum_E | E, t_0 \rangle \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)E} \langle E, t_0 | \,, \tag{3.4.133}$$

where $\sum_E$ is a symbolic summation over all the eigenvalues of H; it could in fact be an integration. Then,

$$\langle \alpha, t | \beta, t_0 \rangle = \sum_E \langle \alpha, t_0 | E, t_0 \rangle \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)E} \langle E, t_0 | \beta, t_0 \rangle \,, \tag{3.4.134}$$

where we recognize that $\langle \alpha, t_0 | E, t_0 \rangle = \langle \alpha | E \rangle$ and $\langle E, t_0 | \beta, t_0 \rangle = \langle E | \beta \rangle$ do not depend on the common time so that

$$\langle \alpha, t | \beta, t_0 \rangle = \sum_E \langle \alpha | E \rangle \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)E} \langle E | \beta \rangle \,. \tag{3.4.135}$$

This tells us that we can extract the eigenvalues E as well as the probability amplitudes $\langle \alpha | E \rangle$ and $\langle E | \beta \rangle$ by expanding the transformation function

$\langle\alpha, t|\beta, t_0\rangle$ into a Fourier sum (or integral) with phase factors of the time difference $t - t_0$. This procedure is quite general.

When applied to

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle a^*, t\big|a', t_0\big\rangle &= \mathrm{e}^{a^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t\,-\,t_0)}a'} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}n\omega(t\,-\,t_0)}\,\frac{a'^n}{\sqrt{n!}}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.136}$$

we read off that the eigenvalues of $H = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$ are $n\hbar\omega$ with $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and that the energy eigenkets $|n\rangle$ and eigenbras $\langle n|$ have equal-time probability amplitudes

$$\big\langle a^*\big|n\big\rangle = \frac{a^{*n}}{\sqrt{n!}}\,, \quad \big\langle n\big|a'\big\rangle = \frac{a'^n}{\sqrt{n!}} \tag{3.4.137}$$

with the eigenbras of $A^\dagger$ and the eigenkets of A, respectively. The symmetric distribution of $1/n!$ is necessary to ensure that these statements are complex conjugates of each other. In short, all the information of (3.4.68) and (3.4.103) is contained in the time transformation function (3.4.116).

Taking yet another step, we note that (3.4.123) and its adjoint statement,

$$\big|\ldots, t\big\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t\,-\,t_0)H}\big|\ldots, t_0\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.138}$$

imply

$$F(t) = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t\,-\,t_0)H}F(t_0)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t\,-\,t_0)H} \tag{3.4.139}$$

for any F that has only a dynamical time dependence but no parametric time dependence, $\partial F/\partial t = 0$. In the present context, the elementary example is $F = A$, for which we know that

$$\begin{aligned} A(t) &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t\,-\,t_0)}A(t_0) \\ \text{and} \quad A(t) &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega(t\,-\,t_0)A^\dagger A}A(t_0)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega(t\,-\,t_0)A^\dagger A}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.140}$$

With $\omega(t - t_0) = \phi$ and all operators at the common time t_0, this says that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}A\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}A\,. \tag{3.4.141}$$

When presented as

$$A\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi\left(A^\dagger A\,+\,1\right)}A\,, \tag{3.4.142}$$

it illustrates a general relation, namely

$$Af\big(A^\dagger A\big) = f\big(A^\dagger A + 1\big)A\,, \tag{3.4.143}$$

which is easily demonstrated by applying the operators to Fock states,

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle n\big|Af\big(A^\dagger A\big) &= \sqrt{n+1}\big\langle n+1\big|f\big(A^\dagger A\big)\\ &= f(n+1)\sqrt{n+1}\big\langle n+1\big| = f(n+1)\big\langle n\big|A\\ &= \big\langle n\big|f\big(A^\dagger A+1\big)A\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.144}$$

now multiply by $|n\rangle$ from the left and sum over n to exploit the completeness relation in Exercise 58. A typical application of (3.4.143) is the subject matter of Exercise 60.

Yet another perspective is to regard $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}A\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}$ as defining a ϕ-dependent operator A_ϕ with $A_{\phi=0} = A$. Then differentiate with respect to ϕ,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}A_\phi &= \frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}A\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}\Big)\\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}\,\mathrm{i}\underbrace{\big[A, A^\dagger A\big]}_{=A}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}\\ &= \mathrm{i}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A}A\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi A^\dagger A} = \mathrm{i}A_\phi\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.145}$$

and solve this differential equation,

$$A_\phi = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}A_{\phi=0} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}A\,. \tag{3.4.146}$$

3.5 Two-dimensional harmonic oscillator

3.5.1 *Isotropy*

The Hamilton operator for an isotropic harmonic oscillator in two dimensions is

$$\begin{aligned}H &= \frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2 + P_2^2\big) + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2\big(X_1^2 + X_2^2\big) - \hbar\omega\\ &= \hbar\omega\Big(A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2\Big)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.5.1}$$

where the isotropy refers to the identical frequencies for both directions. When labeling the eigenkets of H by the oscillator quantum numbers for

the two directions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} H\big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle &= \big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle \hbar\omega(n_1 + n_2) \\ &= \big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle \hbar\omega N \quad \text{with} \quad N = n_1 + n_2 \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.2}$$

so that the energy eigenvalue does not depend on the two quantum numbers individually but only on their sum. As a consequence, there is more than one eigenstate for a given energy. More precisely, the decompositions

$$N = N + 0 = (N-1) + 1 = (N-2) + 2 = \cdots = 0 + N \tag{3.5.3}$$

for $N = n_1 + n_2$ show that there are $N + 1$ mutually orthogonal states to energy $N\hbar\omega$. Put differently, there is a whole $(N+1)$-dimensional subspace to this energy. Therefore, any linear combination of the form

$$\big|\ \big\rangle = \sum_{k=0}^{N} \big|N-k, k\big\rangle \alpha_k \tag{3.5.4}$$

with arbitrary complex coefficients α_k is an eigenket of H to eigenvalue $N\hbar\omega$.

A systematic *degeneracy* of eigenvalues of this kind is never just an accident; it is always the consequence of a symmetry possessed by the Hamilton operator, sometimes a well-hidden symmetry. In this case, however, it is very clear what that symmetry is. It is the invariance of H under rotations,

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 &\to \overline{X}_1 = X_1 \cos(\varphi) + X_2 \sin(\varphi)\,, \\ X_2 &\to \overline{X}_2 = X_2 \cos(\varphi) - X_1 \sin(\varphi)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.5}$$

with φ the arbitrary rotation angle, or, more compactly

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix} \overline{X}_1 \\ \overline{X}_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\varphi) & \sin(\varphi) \\ -\sin(\varphi) & \cos(\varphi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{3.5.6}$$

and likewise for the momentum operators

$$\begin{pmatrix} P_1 \\ P_2 \end{pmatrix} \to \begin{pmatrix} \overline{P}_1 \\ \overline{P}_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\varphi) & \sin(\varphi) \\ -\sin(\varphi) & \cos(\varphi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} P_1 \\ P_2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.5.7}$$

It is important to note that these transformations are unitary, which we verify by checking that the transformed operators obey the same commutation relations as the original ones. Indeed, the commutators

$$\big[X_j, X_k\big] = 0\,, \quad \big[P_j, P_k\big] = 0\,, \quad \big[X_j, P_k\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\delta_{jk} \tag{3.5.8}$$

for $j,k=1,2$ imply the same relations for the transformed operators,

$$\left[\overline{X}_j,\overline{X}_k\right]=0\,,\quad \left[\overline{P}_j,\overline{P}_k\right]=0\,,\quad \left[\overline{X}_j,\overline{P}_k\right]=\mathrm{i}\hbar\delta_{jk}\,, \tag{3.5.9}$$

as one verifies by inspection. Just one example will suffice as an illustration,

$$\begin{aligned}\left[\overline{X}_1,\overline{P}_1\right]&=\left[X_1\cos(\varphi)+X_2\sin(\varphi),P_1\cos(\varphi)+P_2\sin(\varphi)\right]\\&=\underbrace{\left[X_1,P_1\right]}_{=\mathrm{i}\hbar}(\cos\phi)^2+\underbrace{\left[X_2,P_2\right]}_{=\mathrm{i}\hbar}(\sin\phi)^2=\mathrm{i}\hbar\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.5.10}$$

indeed. And concerning the invariance of H, we note that

$$\begin{aligned}X_1^2+X_2^2\to\overline{X}_1^2+\overline{X}_2^2&=\begin{pmatrix}\overline{X}_1&\overline{X}_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\overline{X}_1\\\overline{X}_2\end{pmatrix}=\begin{pmatrix}\overline{X}_1\\\overline{X}_2\end{pmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}}\begin{pmatrix}\overline{X}_1\\\overline{X}_2\end{pmatrix}\\&=\begin{pmatrix}X_1&X_2\end{pmatrix}\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}\cos\phi&-\sin\phi\\\sin\phi&\cos\phi\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\cos\phi&\sin\phi\\-\sin\phi&\cos\phi\end{pmatrix}}_{=\begin{pmatrix}1&0\\0&1\end{pmatrix}}\begin{pmatrix}X_1\\X_2\end{pmatrix}\\&=\begin{pmatrix}X_1&X_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}X_1\\X_2\end{pmatrix}=X_1^2+X_2^2\end{aligned} \tag{3.5.11}$$

is invariant and so are $P_1^2+P_2^2$ and H itself.

The transformation $X_j,P_k\to\overline{X}_j,\overline{P}_k$ does not depend on time as a parameter (but the operators do depend on time, of course) which is to say that we have the same transformation at all times. Therefore, there must be a unitary operator U such that

$$U^\dagger X_jU=\overline{X}_j\,,\quad U^\dagger P_kU=\overline{P}_k \tag{3.5.12}$$

with $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}U=0$. We know that H does not change

$$U^\dagger HU=H \tag{3.5.13}$$

so that $HU=UH$ or $[U,H]=0$. This in turn tells us that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}U=\underbrace{\frac{\partial U}{\partial t}}_{=0}+\underbrace{\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[U,H]}_{=0}=0\,, \tag{3.5.14}$$

and this observation, namely

> if the Hamilton operator is invariant under the unitary transformation effected by U, then U is constant in time, (3.5.15)

is an elementary example of a more general statement that is known as Noether's* theorem.

We can think of the transformation $X_j, P_k \to \overline{X}_j, \overline{P}_k$ as coming about in many small steps, small increments of the parameter φ, such that finally the total transformation is completed. We write

$$U = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi G} \tag{3.5.16}$$

for this total transformation, thereby identifying the hermitian generator G of the unitary transformation. It is more systematic to define G by the infinitesimal transformation that increases ϕ by $\delta\phi$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} U &\to (1 + \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, G)\,, \\ U^\dagger &\to (1 - \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, G) \quad \text{with} \quad G = G^\dagger \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.17}$$

and we have

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{X}_j = U^\dagger X_j U &= (1 - \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, G) X_j (1 + \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, G) \\ &= X_j - \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, [G, X_j] \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.18}$$

and likewise

$$\overline{P}_k = P_k - \mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\, [G, P_k]\,. \tag{3.5.19}$$

Now, for an infinitesimal rotation angle, (3.5.6) and (3.5.7) are

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{X}_1 &= X_1 + \delta\varphi\, X_2\,, & \overline{X}_2 &= X_2 - \delta\varphi\, X_1 \\ \text{and} \quad \overline{P}_1 &= P_1 + \delta\varphi\, P_2\,, & \overline{P}_2 &= P_2 - \delta\varphi\, P_1\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.20}$$

respectively, so that

$$\begin{aligned} -\mathrm{i}[G, X_1] &= X_2\,, & \mathrm{i}[G, X_2] &= X_1 \\ \text{and} \quad -\mathrm{i}[G, P_1] &= P_2\,, & \mathrm{i}[G, P_2] &= P_1\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.21}$$

To proceed further, we recall the differentiation rules of Exercise 20,

$$\big[X, f(X,P)\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial P} f(X,P)\,, \quad \big[f(X,P), P\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial X} f(X,P)\,, \tag{3.5.22}$$

*Emmy NOETHER (1882–1935)

which are valid for any operator pair of the position–momentum type, that is, for which $[X, P] = \mathrm{i}\hbar$ holds. In the present context, we have two such pairs, namely X_1, P_1 and X_2, P_2. Accordingly, the commutator equations in (3.5.21) can be recast to read

$$\begin{aligned} -\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial P_1}G = X_2\,, \qquad & \hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial P_2}G = X_1 \\ \text{and} \quad \hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial X_1}G = P_2\,, \qquad & -\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial X_2}G = P_1\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.23}$$

The solution is immediate,

$$\hbar G = X_1P_2 - X_2P_1\,, \tag{3.5.24}$$

which is hermitian as it stands since X_1 commutes with P_2 and X_2 with P_1.

We recognize here the third cartesian component of the angular momentum vector operator $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{P}$ in three dimensions,

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{P}: \quad \begin{pmatrix} L_1 \\ L_2 \\ L_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \\ X_3 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} P_1 \\ P_2 \\ P_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_2P_3 - X_3P_2 \\ X_3P_1 - X_1P_3 \\ X_1P_2 - X_2P_1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{3.5.25}$$

so $\hbar G = L_3$ and the unitary operator for *rotations* is

$$U = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L_3/\hbar}\,. \tag{3.5.26}$$

We note the obvious analogy with $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar}$, the unitary operator for *translations* that we have met earlier; see, in particular, Section 1.8 and Exercises 10, 11, and 19.

3.5.2 *Eigenstates*

We wish to classify the eigenstates of the Hamilton operator in a way that emphasizes the invariance under rotations, that is, we wish to have common eigenkets of H and L_3,

$$\begin{aligned} H\big|N, m\big\rangle &= \big|N, m\big\rangle\hbar\omega N\,, \\ L_3\big|N, m\big\rangle &= \big|N, m\big\rangle\hbar m\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.27}$$

for which purpose we must establish the eigenvalues $\hbar m$ of L_3. We do this by switching to ladder operators, beginning with

$$A_j = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{X_j}{l} + \mathrm{i}\frac{lP_j}{\hbar}\right), \quad {A_j}^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\frac{X_j}{l} - \mathrm{i}\frac{lP_j}{\hbar}\right), \tag{3.5.28}$$

for which $\left[A_j, A_k^\dagger\right] = \delta_{jk}$. When writing

$$X_j = \frac{l}{\sqrt{2}}\left({A_j}^\dagger + A_j\right), \quad P_j = \frac{\hbar/l}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\mathrm{i}{A_j}^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A_j\right), \tag{3.5.29}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} L_3 &= \frac{\hbar}{2}\left({A_1}^\dagger + A_1\right)\left(\mathrm{i}{A_2}^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A_2\right) - \frac{\hbar}{2}\left({A_2}^\dagger + A_2\right)\left(\mathrm{i}{A_1}^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A_1\right) \\ &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\left({A_2}^\dagger A_1 - {A_1}^\dagger A_2\right), \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.30}$$

and we recall that

$$H = \hbar\omega\left(A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2\right). \tag{3.5.31}$$

It is immediately clear that the Fock states $|n_1, n_2\rangle$ are not eigenstates of L_3,

$$\begin{aligned} L_3\big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle = \big|n_1 - 1, n_2 + 1\big\rangle \mathrm{i}\hbar\sqrt{n_1(n_2+1)} \\ - \big|n_1 + 1, n_2 - 1\big\rangle \mathrm{i}\hbar\sqrt{(n_1+1)n_2}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.32}$$

where — with the sole exception of $n_1 = n_2 = 0$ — the right-hand side is not a multiple of $|n_1, n_2\rangle$.

The alternative set of ladder operators defined by

$$A_\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(A_1 \mp \mathrm{i}A_2), \quad A_\pm^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(A_1^\dagger \pm \mathrm{i}A_2^\dagger\right) \tag{3.5.33}$$

are as good as the original ones because they have analogous commutation relations,

$$\left[A_+, A_+^\dagger\right] = 1, \quad \left[A_-, A_-^\dagger\right] = 1, \quad \left[A_-, A_+^\dagger\right] = 0. \tag{3.5.34}$$

Now,

$$\begin{aligned} A_+^\dagger A_+ &= \frac{1}{2}\left(A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2 + \mathrm{i}A_2^\dagger A_1 - \mathrm{i}A_1^\dagger A_2\right), \\ A_-^\dagger A_- &= \frac{1}{2}\left(A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2 - \mathrm{i}A_2^\dagger A_1 + \mathrm{i}A_1^\dagger A_2\right) \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.35}$$

are clearly such that

$$\begin{aligned} A_+^\dagger A_+ + A_-^\dagger A_- &= A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2 \\ \text{and} \quad A_+^\dagger A_+ - A_-^\dagger A_- &= \mathrm{i}A_2^\dagger A_1 - \mathrm{i}A_1^\dagger A_2 \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.36}$$

so that

$$H = \hbar\omega\big(A_+^\dagger A_+ + A_-^\dagger A_-\big) \tag{3.5.37}$$

and

$$L_3 = \hbar\big(A_+^\dagger A_+ - A_-^\dagger A_-\big)\,. \tag{3.5.38}$$

Therefore, the common eigenkets of $A_+^\dagger A_+$ and $A_-^\dagger A_-$,

$$\begin{aligned} A_+^\dagger A_+\big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle &= \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle n_+\,, \\ A_-^\dagger A_-\big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle &= \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle n_-\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.39}$$

with $n_\pm = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, are also the looked-for joint eigenkets of H and L_3,

$$\begin{aligned} H\big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle &= \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle\hbar\omega(n_+ + n_-)\,, \\ L_3\big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle &= \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle\hbar(n_+ - n_-)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.40}$$

Upon identifying the ket $|N, m\rangle$ in (3.5.27) with $|n_+, n_-\rangle$,

$$\big|N, m\big\rangle = \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle \quad \text{for} \quad N = n_+ + n_- \quad \text{and} \quad m = n_+ - n_-\,, \tag{3.5.41}$$

we have thus found the common eigenkets of H and L_3. For a given value of given $N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, the possible values of m are

$$m = N, N-2, \ldots, -N\,, \tag{3.5.42}$$

a total number of $N + 1$ values, as it should be.

This contains an important lesson, perhaps the most significant one of this brief discussion of the isotropic two-dimensional harmonic oscillator. Namely, we learn that the eigenvalues of L_3, the third component of the vector operator $\boldsymbol{L}$ for orbital angular momentum in (3.5.25), are given by $\hbar m$ with $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots$, that is,

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{the eigenvalues of } L_3 = X_1P_2 - X_2P_1 \\ &\text{are } 0, \pm\hbar, \pm2\hbar, \pm3\hbar, \ldots\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.43}$$

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 4

Orbital Angular Momentum

4.1 Commutation relations

For the three dimensions of the physical space, we have the position vector operator $\boldsymbol{R}$ and the momentum vector operator $\boldsymbol{P}$ with cartesian components

$$\boldsymbol{R} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \\ X_3 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{P} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} P_1 \\ P_2 \\ P_3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.1.1}$$

referring to a particular, yet arbitrary, choice of what we call the first, second, and third direction. The fundamental Heisenberg commutation relations

$$\big[X_j, P_k\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\delta_{jk} \tag{4.1.2}$$

are compactly summarized by

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\, \boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{b}\,, \tag{4.1.3}$$

where $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$ are *numerical* vectors. We supplement this by the statements that all components of $\boldsymbol{R}$ commute with each other,

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}] = 0\,, \tag{4.1.4}$$

and the same is true for the components of $\boldsymbol{P}$,

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}] = 0\,. \tag{4.1.5}$$

The one-dimensional statement

$$\big[f(X,P), P\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial X} f(X,P) \tag{4.1.6}$$

of Exercise 20 has the three-dimensional generalization

$$\big[f(\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{P}),\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\big]=\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\frac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{R}}f(\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{P})\,, \tag{4.1.7}$$

where $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{R}}$ is the *gradient* differential operator for $\boldsymbol{R}$,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{R}}\mathrel{\widehat{=}}\begin{pmatrix}\dfrac{\partial}{\partial X_1}\\[2ex]\dfrac{\partial}{\partial X_2}\\[2ex]\dfrac{\partial}{\partial X_3}\end{pmatrix} \tag{4.1.8}$$

so that $\partial f\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)/\partial\boldsymbol{R}$ is the vector with cartesian components $\partial f/\partial X_1$, $\partial f/\partial X_2$, and $\partial f/\partial X_3$. Likewise, we generalize

$$\big[X,f(X,P)\big]=\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial P}f(X,P) \tag{4.1.9}$$

to

$$\big[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R},f(\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{P})\big]=\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\frac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{P}}f(\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{P})\,. \tag{4.1.10}$$

The elementary illustration of these differentiation rules is, of course, the Heisenberg commutator itself, inasmuch as

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}]=\left\{\begin{array}{l}\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\dfrac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{R}}\;\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\\[2ex]\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\dfrac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{P}}\;\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\end{array}\right\}=\mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{b} \tag{4.1.11}$$

exploits the familiar identity

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\boldsymbol{R}}\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}=\boldsymbol{a}\,, \tag{4.1.12}$$

and likewise for the $\boldsymbol{P}$ gradient of $\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}$.

As noted earlier, see (3.5.25), we further have the *orbital angular momentum* vector operator

$$\boldsymbol{L}=\boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P} \tag{4.1.13}$$

with the cartesian components stated in (3.5.25),

$$\begin{aligned}L_1&=X_2P_3-X_3P_2\,,\\L_2&=X_3P_1-X_1P_3\,,\\L_3&=X_1P_2-X_2P_1\,.\end{aligned} \tag{4.1.14}$$

We supplement the commutation relations of (3.5.21), there stated for $G = L_3/\hbar$,

$$\begin{aligned} [X_1, L_3] &= -\mathrm{i}\hbar X_2\,, & [P_1, L_3] &= -\mathrm{i}\hbar P_2\,, \\ [X_2, L_3] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar X_1\,, & [P_2, L_3] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar P_1\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.15}$$

by

$$[X_3, L_3] = 0\,, \qquad [P_3, L_3] = 0\,, \tag{4.1.16}$$

which say "rotations around the third axis do not change the third components" and summarize all three compactly in

$$\begin{aligned} [\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}, L_3] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\,(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{e}_3)\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\,, \\ [\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}, L_3] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\,(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{e}_3)\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.17}$$

where $\boldsymbol{e}_3$ is the unit vector for the third direction, as it appears in the cartesian decomposition

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{e}_1 L_1 + \boldsymbol{e}_2 L_2 + \boldsymbol{e}_3 L_3\,. \tag{4.1.18}$$

With $L_3 = \boldsymbol{e}_3\cdot\boldsymbol{L}$ on the left, the statements in (4.1.17) are obviously particular cases of

$$\begin{aligned} [\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\,(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{R} = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot(\boldsymbol{b}\times\boldsymbol{R})\,, \\ [\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\,(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{P} = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot(\boldsymbol{b}\times\boldsymbol{P})\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.19}$$

Just like $U = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L_3/\hbar}$ is the unitary operator for a rotation around the third axis, we have $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi\boldsymbol{e}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}/\hbar}$ as the unitary operator for rotations around the axis specified by unit vector $\boldsymbol{e}$ and by rotation angle φ. For infinitesimal rotations with $\delta\varphi\,\boldsymbol{e} = \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}$, we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta\varphi\,\boldsymbol{e}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}/\hbar} = 1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}\cdot\boldsymbol{L} \tag{4.1.20}$$

and the effect on the position operator is

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{R} &\to \Big(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\Big)\boldsymbol{R}\Big(1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\Big) \\ &= \boldsymbol{R} - \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}] = \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}\times\boldsymbol{R}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.21}$$

of which we have seen the $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi} \propto \boldsymbol{e}_3$ case in (3.5.20) above.

We learn something new by asking the question: What is the difference between performing two consecutive rotations in either order? So, we first rotate by $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$ then by $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{R} &\to \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{R} \\ &\to \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times (\boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R}) \\ &= \boldsymbol{R} - (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \times \boldsymbol{R} + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R})\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.22}$$

Or, we first rotate by $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$ then by $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$,

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{R} &\to \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R} \\ &\to \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times (\boldsymbol{R} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{R}) \\ &= \boldsymbol{R} - (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \times \boldsymbol{R} + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{R})\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.23}$$

The difference

$$\begin{aligned}&\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R}) - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{R}) \\ &= \underbrace{\big(\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times \boldsymbol{R}) + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \times (\boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1) + \boldsymbol{R} \times (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2)\big)}_{=0} \\ &\quad + (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \times \boldsymbol{R} \\ &= (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \times \boldsymbol{R} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{R}, (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\big] \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.24}$$

is itself an infinitesimal rotation. The vanishing of $\big(\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \times \cdots\big)$ in the second line is an application of Jacobi's* identity for vectors. Exercise 60 in *Basic Matters* deals with the commutator version.

Now, let us look at this same procedure from the point of view of two consecutive unitary transformations. First $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$ and then $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{R} \to{}& \Big(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\Big)\Big(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\Big)\boldsymbol{R}\Big(1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\Big)\Big(1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\Big) \\ &= \boldsymbol{R} - \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{R}, (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2) \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\big] \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\Big(\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\, \boldsymbol{R}\, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\, \boldsymbol{R}\, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L} \\ &\qquad - \boldsymbol{R}\, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\, \boldsymbol{R}\Big)\,; \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.25}$$

likewise, first $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$ and then $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$,

*Carl Gustav Jacob JACOBI (1804–1851)

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{R} \to \boldsymbol{R} &- \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{R}, (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2)\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\big] \\ &+ \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\Big(\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{R}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{R}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L} \\ &\qquad - \boldsymbol{R}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{R}\Big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.26}$$

Their difference is

$$\begin{aligned} &-\frac{1}{\hbar^2}\big[\boldsymbol{R}, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\big] - \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\big[\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{R}\big] \\ &= \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\Big[\boldsymbol{R}, \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big(\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L} - \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\big)\Big] \\ &= \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\Big[\boldsymbol{R}, \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\big]\Big]\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.27}$$

and the comparison with the difference in (4.1.24) establishes

$$\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\big] = (\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\times\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2)\cdot\boldsymbol{L} + \boxed{?}\,, \tag{4.1.28}$$

where $\boxed{?}$ commutes with $\boldsymbol{R}$, so that it is a function of $\boldsymbol{R}$ alone, not containing any component of the momentum operator $\boldsymbol{P}$. But, we could have gone through the same chain of arguments by considering successive infinitesimal rotations of $\boldsymbol{P}$ rather than $\boldsymbol{R}$, and then we would have concluded that $\boxed{?}$ is a function of $\boldsymbol{P}$ alone, not containing any components of $\boldsymbol{R}$. Therefore, $\boxed{?}$ can at best be a multiple of the identity. It must be proportional to $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$ and proportional to $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$ because the left-hand side has this proportionality. These infinitesimal vectors can only be combined into a number by the scalar product $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$ so that

$$\boxed{?} \propto \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2 \tag{4.1.29}$$

follows. Since this is symmetric under the interchange $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1 \leftrightarrow \boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$ whereas the left-hand side in (4.1.28) is antisymmetric, we can match the symmetry only if $\boxed{?} = 0$. Thus, we conclude that

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,, \tag{4.1.30}$$

now writing $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$ for $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{\delta\varphi}_2$.

Together with the statements in (4.1.19), we have

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{F}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{F}\,, \tag{4.1.31}$$

where $\boldsymbol{F}$ is $\boldsymbol{R}$, or $\boldsymbol{P}$, or $\boldsymbol{L}$, or any linear combination of them, that is, $\boldsymbol{F}$ is *any* vector operator,

$$\boldsymbol{F} = \alpha\boldsymbol{R} + \beta\boldsymbol{P} + \gamma\boldsymbol{L}\,. \tag{4.1.32}$$

This includes the cases in which α, β, γ are operators themselves, composed of scalar operators such as

$$\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\,,\ \boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\,,\ \boldsymbol{P}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\,,\ \boldsymbol{L}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}\,,\ \ldots \tag{4.1.33}$$

because any such dot product of two vectors commutes with $\boldsymbol{L}$, as it is invariant under rotations; see Exercise 76.

4.2 Eigenvalues and eigenstates

One such scalar operator is $\boldsymbol{L}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}$; it commutes with $\boldsymbol{L}$,

$$\Big[\boldsymbol{L}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{L}\Big] = 0\,, \tag{4.2.1}$$

although the components of $\boldsymbol{L}$ do not commute among themselves,

$$[L_1, L_2] = \mathrm{i}\hbar L_3\,, \tag{4.2.2}$$

which — we recall — is the essence of the geometrical observation that it matters in which order you perform successive rotations.

As a consequence, there are common eigenstates of $\boldsymbol{L}^2 = \boldsymbol{L}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}$ and either one of its components. As usual, we single out the third component and thus look for common eigenstates of $\boldsymbol{L}^2$ and L_3,

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{L}^2\big|l,m\big\rangle &= \big|l,m\big\rangle\hbar^2 l(l+1)\,,\\ L_3\big|l,m\big\rangle &= \big|l,m\big\rangle\hbar m\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.3}$$

where we already know what is stated in (3.5.43), namely that the possible values for m are $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots$, all differences $n_+ - n_-$ of (3.5.41). That we write the eigenvalue of $\boldsymbol{L}^2$ as $\hbar^2 l(l+1)$ will turn out to be a convenient choice in a short while.

The nonhermitian operators

$$L_\pm = L_1 \pm \mathrm{i}L_2 = L_\mp^\dagger \tag{4.2.4}$$

are *ladder operators* for the quantum number m, inasmuch as

$$L_3 L_\pm = L_\pm(L_3 \pm \hbar) \tag{4.2.5}$$

which we verify easily,

$$\begin{aligned}\big[L_3, L_\pm\big] &= \big[L_3, L_1\big] \pm \mathrm{i}\big[L_3, L_2\big] \\ &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\, L_2 \pm \mathrm{i}(-\mathrm{i}\hbar L_1) = \pm\hbar\,(L_1 \pm \mathrm{i}L_2) = \pm\hbar L_\pm\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.6}$$

The ladder operator property is demonstrated by

$$L_3 L_\pm \big|l, m\big\rangle = L_\pm(L_3 \pm \hbar)\big|l, m\big\rangle = L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle\hbar(m \pm 1) \tag{4.2.7}$$

which implies

$$L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle \propto \big|l, m \pm 1\big\rangle \tag{4.2.8}$$

because $L_\pm|l, m\rangle$ is an eigenket of L_3 with the eigenvalue $\hbar(m \pm 1)$.

As usual, we take the $|l, m\rangle$ kets as orthonormal,

$$\big\langle l, m\big|l', m'\big\rangle = \left\{\begin{matrix} 1 \text{ if } l = l' \text{ and } m = m' \\ 0 \qquad\quad \text{otherwise} \end{matrix}\right\} = \delta_{ll'}\delta_{mm'}\,, \tag{4.2.9}$$

and find the proportionality factor in (4.2.8) by evaluating the length of ket $L_\pm|l, m\rangle$,

$$\big\langle l, m\big|L_\pm^\dagger L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle = \big\langle l, m\big|L_\mp L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle\,. \tag{4.2.10}$$

Now, note that

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2 = L_1^2 + L_2^2 + L_3^2 \tag{4.2.11}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} L_+L_- &= (L_1 + \mathrm{i}L_2)(L_1 - \mathrm{i}L_2) = L_1^2 + L_2^2 - \mathrm{i}\,[L_1, L_2] \\ &= \boldsymbol{L}^2 - L_3^2 + \hbar L_3\,, \\ L_-L_+ &= (L_1 - \mathrm{i}L_2)(L_1 + \mathrm{i}L_2) = L_1^2 + L_2^2 + \mathrm{i}\,[L_1, L_2] \\ &= \boldsymbol{L}^2 - L_3^2 - \hbar L_3 \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.12}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle l, m\big|L_\mp L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle &= \big\langle l, m\big|\big((\boldsymbol{L}^2 - L_3^2 \mp \hbar L_3\big)\big|l, m\big\rangle \\ &= \hbar^2\big(l(l+1) - m^2 \mp m\big) \\ &= \hbar^2(l \mp m)(l \pm m + 1)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.13}$$

This is the squared length of $L_\pm|l, m\rangle$, and therefore we have

$$L_\pm\big|l, m\big\rangle = \big|l, m \pm 1\big\rangle\hbar\sqrt{(l \mp m)(l \pm m + 1)} \tag{4.2.14}$$

with the usual convention of a positive normalization factor.

Since

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2 - L_3^2 = L_1^2 + L_2^2 \tag{4.2.15}$$

is a positive operator, its eigenvalues cannot be negative, saying that

$$l(l+1) \geq m^2 \tag{4.2.16}$$

for all $|l,m\rangle$, so the increase of m by one upon application of L_+ must terminate when the largest m value is reached for the given l value,

$$L_+\big|l,m\big\rangle = 0 \quad \text{if } m \text{ is the maximal value for the given } l \text{ value} \tag{4.2.17}$$

so that

$$(l-m)(l+m+1) = 0 \tag{4.2.18}$$

for the largest m value, implying that $m = l$ then. Likewise, there must be a minimal m value for which $L_-\big|l,m\big\rangle = 0$ or $(l+m)(l-m+1) = 0$ so that $m = -l$ is that smallest value. In short, we have

$$m = l, l-1, \ldots, -l \tag{4.2.19}$$

for the possible m values to any l. Since we know already that the possible values of m are all integers, $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \pm3, \ldots$, it now follows that l can only have the values $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, all nonnegative integers.

In summary, the common eigenkets of $\boldsymbol{L}^2$ and L_3 are such that the eigenket equations in (4.2.3) hold with $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and $m = 0, \pm1, \ldots, \pm l$ so that there are $2l+1$ states for the given l value. The ladder operators $L_1 \pm \mathrm{i}L_2$ increase or decrease the m value in accordance with

$$\begin{aligned}(L_1 \pm \mathrm{i}L_2)\big|l,m\big\rangle &= \big|l,m\pm1\big\rangle\hbar\sqrt{(l\mp m)(l\pm m+1)}\,,\\ \big\langle l,m\big|(L_1 \pm \mathrm{i}L_2) &= \hbar\sqrt{(l\pm m)(l\mp m+1)}\big\langle l,m\mp1\big|\,.\end{aligned} \tag{4.2.20}$$

As a final remark, let us note that we meet a commutation relation of the structure in (4.1.30) also in (3.5.9) of *Basic Matters* where we have

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}] = 2\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,. \tag{4.2.21}$$

We multiply by $\left(\frac{1}{2}\hbar\right)^2$,

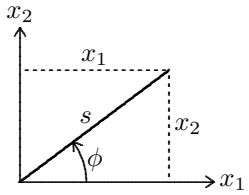
$$\Big[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}\Big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\big(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b}\big)\cdot\frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,, \tag{4.2.22}$$

and conclude that $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ has exactly the same commutation relations as the orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$. But since the eigenvalues of any component

of Pauli's* vector operator $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are ± 1, we have $\pm\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ for the eigenvalues of $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\sigma_3$, which would mean $m = \pm\frac{1}{2}$ and $l = \frac{1}{2}$. Therefore, $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ cannot be an orbital angular momentum. Indeed, it is an *intrinsic* angular momentum, called *spin*, for which there is no classical analog (nothing is "spinning"). General angular momenta of this kind are discussed in Section 4.1 of *Perturbed Evolution*, but presently we only deal with orbital angular momentum for which l and m are integers, not half-integers.

4.3 Differential operators for polar coordinates

In two dimensions, it is expedient to employ polar coordinates s, ϕ rather than cartesian coordinates x_1, x_2 if the physical system of interest exhibits a rotational symmetry. The two sets of coordinates are related to each other by



$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= s\cos(\phi)\,, \\ x_2 &= s\sin(\phi)\,, \\ x_1 + \mathrm{i}x_2 &= s\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\,, \quad s > 0\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.3.1}$$

and we shall write $\big|x_1, x_2\big\rangle = \big|s, \phi\big\rangle$ for one and the same eigenket of X_1 and X_2, once labeled by cartesian coordinates and once by polar coordinates, but referring to the same point in the x_1, x_2 plane.

The kinetic energy operator has a corresponding differential operator

$$\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|\frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2 + P_2^2\big) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}\right)^2\right)\big\langle x_1, x_2\big| \tag{4.3.2}$$

and so does the angular momentum operator

$$\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|L_3 = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\left(x_1\frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} - x_2\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\right)\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|\,. \tag{4.3.3}$$

We use

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} &= \cos(\phi)\frac{\partial}{\partial s} - \sin(\phi)\frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi}\,, \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} &= \sin(\phi)\frac{\partial}{\partial s} + \cos(\phi)\frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \end{aligned} \tag{4.3.4}$$

*Wolfgang Pauli (1900–1958)

to express them in polar coordinates, with the outcomes

$$\langle s,\phi|L_3 = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\langle s,\phi| \tag{4.3.5}$$

and

$$\langle s,\phi|\frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2+P_2^2\big) = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial s^2}+\frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial s}+\frac{1}{s^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right)\langle s,\phi|\,. \tag{4.3.6}$$

The eigenvalue equations (3.5.27) for the common eigenstates of L_3 and the Hamilton operator of the two-dimensional harmonic oscillator,

$$\begin{aligned} L_3|N,m\rangle &= |N,m\rangle\hbar m\,,\\ H|N,m\rangle &= |N,m\rangle\hbar\omega N\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.3.7}$$

with the Hamilton operator of (3.5.1),

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2+P_2^2\big)+\frac{1}{2}M\omega^2\big(X_1^2+X_2^2\big)-\hbar\omega\,, \tag{4.3.8}$$

are therefore equivalent to two differential equations for the position wave function $\langle x_1,x_2|N,m\rangle = \langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle$,

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle = \hbar m\langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle\,,\\ &\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial s^2}+\frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial s}+\frac{1}{s^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right)+\frac{1}{2}M\omega^2s^2-\hbar\omega\right)\langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle\\ &\qquad = N\hbar\omega\langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.3.9}$$

the second of which is the time-independent Schrödinger differential equation. The first equation implies that the ϕ dependence is given by a phase factor $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}$, and so we are invited to write

$$\langle s,\phi|N,m\rangle = \psi_{Nm}(s)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}\,. \tag{4.3.10}$$

We insert this into the second equation, note that $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\to \mathrm{i}m$ then, and arrive at

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial s^2}+\frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\right)+\frac{\hbar^2m^2}{2Ms^2}+\frac{1}{2}M\omega^2s^2-(N+1)\hbar\omega\right)\psi_{Nm}(s)=0\,. \tag{4.3.11}$$

The first simplification results from making use of

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial s^2} + \frac{1}{s}\frac{\partial}{\partial s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{s}}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial s^2}\sqrt{s} + \frac{1}{4s^2}\,, \tag{4.3.12}$$

which is an identity for differential operators. This gets us to (divide by $\hbar\omega$ as well)

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar}{2M\omega}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}s^2} + \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega}\frac{m^2-1/4}{s^2} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{M\omega}{\hbar}s^2 - (N+1)\right)\sqrt{s}\psi_{Nm}(s) = 0\,, \tag{4.3.13}$$

where we write $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}s}$ rather than $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial s}$ as we are dealing with a function of only one variable now. A further simplification is achieved by switching to the dimensionless distance variable

$$y = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{\hbar}}\,s\,, \qquad \frac{\hbar}{M\omega}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}s^2} = \frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}y^2}\,, \tag{4.3.14}$$

where we recognize once more that $\sqrt{\hbar/(M\omega)}$ is the natural unit of length for a harmonic oscillator. Then (also multiply by -2)

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}y^2} - \frac{m^2-1/4}{y^2} - y^2 + 2N + 2\right)\sqrt{s}\psi_{Nm}(s) = 0\,. \tag{4.3.15}$$

One last step is to realize the possible values for N and m,

$$\begin{aligned} &N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \text{and} \quad m = N, N-2, \ldots, -N \\ \text{or}\quad &m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \quad \text{and} \quad N = |m|, |m|+2, |m|+4, \ldots\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.3.16}$$

with the aid of the *radial quantum number* n_r,

$$N = |m| + 2n_r \quad \text{with} \quad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots\,, \quad n_r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots\,, \tag{4.3.17}$$

where m and n_r take on their possible values independent of each other. That is, we got rid of the slightly awkward restrictions in (4.3.16) on the values of N or m when the other value is given. With

$$u_{n_r m}(y) = \sqrt{s}\,\psi_{Nm}(s)\,, \tag{4.3.18}$$

we then have

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}y^2} - \frac{m^2-1/4}{y^2} - y^2 + 2|m| + 4n_r + 2\right)u_{n_r m}(y) = 0 \tag{4.3.19}$$

and note in passing that $|m|$ not m is relevant here.

As discussed in Section 5.2, the relevant solutions of this differential equation are most easily and compactly expressed in terms of the Laguerre* polynomials. But right now we are content with having established this differential equation. It will serve an important purpose shortly.

4.4 Differential operators for spherical coordinates

In three dimensions, there is a large choice of particular coordinate systems for special geometries, and one of the most frequently used is the system of spherical coordinates that is particularly well suited for situations with full three-dimensional rotational invariance, that is, full spherical symmetry. This is the case when the Hamilton operator has the form

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + V\big(\big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|\big) \tag{4.4.1}$$

with a potential energy that *only* depends on the distance $\big|\boldsymbol{R}\big| = \sqrt{\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}}$ from the center. Such a Hamilton operator commutes with all components of the orbital angular momentum operator $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}$,

$$[H, \boldsymbol{L}] = 0\,, \tag{4.4.2}$$

and therefore it is expedient to employ the common eigenstates $\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle$ of H, $\boldsymbol{L}^2$, and L_3 as the most natural set of basis states,

$$\begin{aligned} L_3\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle &= \big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle\hbar m\,,\\ \boldsymbol{L}^2\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle &= \big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle\hbar^2 l(l+1)\,,\\ H\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle &= \big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle E_{n_r l} \end{aligned} \tag{4.4.3}$$

with the eigenenergies $E_{n_r l}$ depending on the angular momentum quantum number l and the radial quantum number n_r but not on the quantum number m to L_3.

The Schrödinger eigenvalue equation for the wave function $\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle$ follows immediately from

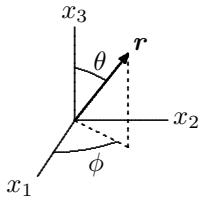
$$\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|\boldsymbol{R} = \boldsymbol{r}\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|\,, \qquad \big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|\boldsymbol{P} = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big| \tag{4.4.4}$$

and reads

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 + V(r)\right)\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle = E_{n_r l}\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|n_r, l, m\big\rangle \tag{4.4.5}$$

*Edmond LAGUERRE (1834–1886)

with $r = |\boldsymbol{r}| = \sqrt{\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}} = \sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2}$. Since the potential energy part $V(r)$ depends only on the distance r, which is one of the spherical coordinates, we shall use spherical coordinates from here onward. We recall their definition:



$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= r\sin(\theta)\,\cos(\phi)\,,\\ x_2 &= r\sin(\theta)\,\sin(\phi)\,,\\ x_3 &= r\cos(\theta)\,,\\ r &> 0\,,\ 0 \le \theta \le \pi\,,\ 0 \le \phi < 2\pi\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.4.6}$$

Although we indicated a particular 2π range for the azimuth ϕ, this is not really necessary and sometimes awkward; we can just as well regard ϕ as a periodic variable and regard ϕ and $\phi + 2\pi$ as the same azimuth. The same remark applies to the polar coordinates in (4.3.1). The polar angle θ is rightly restricted to $0 \le \theta \le \pi$.

The local cartesian coordinate system is specified by the unit vector for the r, θ, and ϕ directions

$$\underbrace{\boldsymbol{e}_r \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} \sin(\theta)\cos(\phi) \\ \sin(\theta)\sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\theta) \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{pointing ``up''}}, \quad \underbrace{\boldsymbol{e}_\theta \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta)\cos(\phi) \\ \cos(\theta)\sin(\phi) \\ -\sin(\theta) \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{pointing ``south''}}, \quad \underbrace{\boldsymbol{e}_\phi \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\phi) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{pointing ``east''}} \tag{4.4.7}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{r} &= r\,\boldsymbol{e}_r\,,\\ \mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r} &= \boldsymbol{e}_r \mathrm{d}r + \boldsymbol{e}_\theta\, r\mathrm{d}\theta + \boldsymbol{e}_\phi\, r\sin(\theta)\,\mathrm{d}\phi\,,\\ \text{and}\quad \boldsymbol{\nabla} &= \boldsymbol{e}_r \frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \boldsymbol{e}_\theta \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} + \boldsymbol{e}_\phi \frac{1}{r\sin(\theta)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi} \end{aligned} \tag{4.4.8}$$

are the position vector, its infinitesimal increment, and the gradient differential operator, respectively. We could use them to express $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2$ and $\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ as differentiations with respect to r, θ, and ϕ; see Exercise 84.

The result of this exercise would appear in

$$\langle \boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{L}^2 = \langle \boldsymbol{r}|\big(\boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}\big)^2 = \left(\boldsymbol{r}\times\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\right)^2\langle \boldsymbol{r}| = -\hbar^2\big(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla}\big)^2\langle \boldsymbol{r}|\,, \tag{4.4.9}$$

but right now we do not need all the finer details. Rather we note that

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P} = -\boldsymbol{P}\times\boldsymbol{R} \tag{4.4.10}$$

and therefore

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2 = -(\boldsymbol{P}\times\boldsymbol{R})\cdot(\boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}) \tag{4.4.11}$$

so that

$$\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{L}^2 = \hbar^2(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{r})\cdot(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla})\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\,, \tag{4.4.12}$$

and our attention turns to

$$\begin{aligned}(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{r})\cdot(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla}) &= \boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\big(\boldsymbol{r}\times(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla})\big)\\ &= \boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot(\boldsymbol{r}\,\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla} - r^2\boldsymbol{\nabla})\,,\end{aligned} \tag{4.4.13}$$

where the gradient differentiates all functions of $\boldsymbol{r}$ on its right, including the unwritten $\langle\boldsymbol{r}|$. With

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{r} = 3 + \boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla} \quad\text{and}\quad \boldsymbol{\nabla}r^2 = 2\boldsymbol{r} + r^2\boldsymbol{\nabla}\,, \tag{4.4.14}$$

this differential operator becomes

$$(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{r})\cdot(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla}) = (\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla})^2 + \boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla} - r^2\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\,, \tag{4.4.15}$$

and with $\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla} = r\dfrac{\partial}{\partial r}$, we arrive at

$$(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{r})\cdot(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla}) = r^2\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r} - \boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\right). \tag{4.4.16}$$

After putting the various pieces together, we have

$$\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{L}^2 = \hbar^2 r^2\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right)\langle\boldsymbol{r}| + r^2\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{P}^2 \tag{4.4.17}$$

or, upon solving for $\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{P}^2$,

$$\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{P}^2 = -\hbar^2\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right)\langle\boldsymbol{r}| + \frac{1}{r^2}\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\boldsymbol{L}^2\,. \tag{4.4.18}$$

The Schrödinger eigenvalue differential equation (4.4.5) is therefore more explicitly given by

$$\begin{aligned}&-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right)\langle\boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle + V(r)\langle\boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle\\ &+\frac{1}{2Mr^2}\langle\boldsymbol{r}|\underbrace{\boldsymbol{L}^2|n_r,l,m\rangle}_{=|n_r,l,m\rangle\hbar^2 l(l+1)} = E_{n_r l}\langle\boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{4.4.19}$$

or

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right)+\frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}+V(r)\right)\langle \boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle$$
$$=E_{n_r l}\langle \boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle\,. \tag{4.4.20}$$

We know that $L_3 \to \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}$ because the ϕ coordinate of spherical coordinates is exactly the same as the ϕ coordinate of polar coordinates, and since L_1 and L_2 are on equal footing with L_3, it follows that they also differentiate an angle dependence but no radial dependence. As a consequence, the wave function will contain an angular part that is completely determined by the quantum numbers l and m and a radial part specified by quantum numbers n_r and l,

$$\langle \boldsymbol{r}|n_r,l,m\rangle = \psi_{n_r l}(r)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)\,, \tag{4.4.21}$$

and the differential equation (4.4.20) is really an equation for $\psi_{n_r l}(r)$ alone.

We also note that

$$\left(\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}r\frac{\partial}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\right)=\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}+\frac{2}{r}\frac{\partial}{\partial r}=\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2}r \tag{4.4.22}$$

and so get to

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}r^2}+\frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}+V(r)\right)r\psi_{n_r l}(r)=E_{n_r l}\,r\psi_{n_r l}(r)\,. \tag{4.4.23}$$

This radial Schrödinger eigenvalue equation looks like a one-dimensional Schrödinger equation with an effective potential energy

$$\frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}+V(r)\,, \tag{4.4.24}$$

but it must be kept in mind that only $V(r)$ is genuine physical potential energy. The so-called "centrifugal potential" $\frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}$ is physical kinetic energy; it is there also for force-free motion.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 5

Hydrogen-like Atoms

5.1 Hamilton operator, Schrödinger equation

For the motion of a single electron — charge $-e$ and mass M — in the field of a very heavy nucleus of charge Ze, we have the Hamilton operator

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}\right|}\,, \tag{5.1.1}$$

where we have the attractive Coulomb* potential for the electrostatic interaction between the nuclear charge and the electron charge. For $Z = 1$, this would refer to the hydrogen atom, for $Z = 2$, it is the helium ion He^{+}, for $Z = 3$, we have the doubly charged lithium ion Li^{++}, and so forth. The radial Schrödinger eigenvalue equation is then

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}r^2} + \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2} - \frac{Ze^2}{r} - E_{n_r l}\right) r\psi_{n_r l}(r) = 0\,. \tag{5.1.2}$$

Just as there is a natural length scale and a natural energy scale for the harmonic oscillator, there is a natural scale for hydrogenic atoms like these or for atoms in general. It is set by the *Bohr*† *radius*

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{Me^2} \quad \text{for the length} \tag{5.1.3}$$

and by

$$\frac{e^2}{a_0} = \frac{Me^4}{\hbar^2} \quad \text{for the energy}\,, \tag{5.1.4}$$

*Charles-Augustin de Coulomb (1736–1806) †Niels Henrik David Bohr (1885–1962)

which is twice the so-called *Rydberg** *constant* Ry. Their numerical values are

$$a_0 = 0.5292\,\text{Å}\,, \quad \frac{e^2}{a_0} = 2\,\text{Ry} = 27.2\,\text{eV}\,, \tag{5.1.5}$$

which remind us of the fact that atoms are very tiny objects.

So, we write

$$r = a_0 y\,, \qquad E_{n_r l} = \frac{e^2}{a_0}\mathcal{E}_{n_r l}\,, \tag{5.1.6}$$

where y and $\mathcal{E}_{n_r l}$ are dimensionless, and get

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}y^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{y^2} + \frac{2Z}{y} + 2\mathcal{E}_{n_r l}\right) u_{n_r l}(y) = 0 \tag{5.1.7}$$

with $u_{n_r l}(y) = r\psi_{n_r l}(r)$.

This is, in fact, not an entirely new equation for us, as will become obvious after the change of variables from y to x in accordance with

$$2\lambda y = x^2\,, \qquad \lambda\,\mathrm{d}y = x\,\mathrm{d}x\,, \qquad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}y} = \frac{\lambda}{x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\,, \tag{5.1.8}$$

where λ is a parameter to be fixed later. Now,

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}y}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{\lambda}{x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\right)^2 &= \lambda^2\frac{1}{x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\frac{1}{x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} = \frac{\lambda^2}{x^2}\left(\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{x}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\right) \\ &= \frac{\lambda^2}{x^2}\sqrt{x}\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2} - \frac{3}{4x^2}\right)\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{5.1.9}$$

and the differential equation for $u_{n_r l}(y)$ reads

$$\frac{\lambda^2}{\sqrt{x^3}}\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2} - \frac{3}{4x^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{y^2}\frac{x^2}{\lambda^2} + \frac{2Z}{y}\frac{x^2}{\lambda^2} + 2\mathcal{E}\frac{x^2}{\lambda^2}\right)\frac{u(y)}{\sqrt{x}} = 0\,, \tag{5.1.10}$$

where

$$\frac{l(l+1)}{y^2}\frac{x^2}{\lambda^2} = \frac{4l(l+1)}{x^2} = \frac{(2l+1)^2 - 1}{x^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{2Z}{y}\frac{x^2}{\lambda^2} = \frac{4Z}{\lambda}\,, \tag{5.1.11}$$

so that

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2} - \frac{(2l+1)^2 - \frac{1}{4}}{x^2} + \frac{4Z}{\lambda} + \frac{2\mathcal{E}}{\lambda^2}x^2\right)\frac{u(y)}{\sqrt{x}} = 0\,. \tag{5.1.12}$$

*Janne RYDBERG (1854–1919)

Compare this with (4.3.19), the radial Schrödinger equation for the two-dimensional harmonic oscillator,

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}y^2} - \frac{m^2-1/4}{y^2} - y^2 + 2|m| + 4n_r + 2\right)u(y) = 0\,, \tag{5.1.13}$$

and recognize that the two equations are actually the same provided that we use this "dictionary" for the translation:

two-dimensional harmonic oscillator	three-dimensional hydrogenic atom
$m^2-1/4$	$(2l+1)^2-1/4$
-1	$2\mathcal{E}/\lambda^2$
$2\|m\|+4n_r+2$	$4Z/\lambda$

(5.1.14)

This tells us that the hydrogenic eigenvalues are

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{1}{2}\lambda^2 \quad \text{with} \quad \lambda = \frac{2Z}{|m|+2n_r+1}\,, \quad \text{where } |m| = 2l+1\,, \tag{5.1.15}$$

that is,

$$\mathcal{E}_{n_r l} = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2Z}{2l+1+2n_r+1}\right)^2 = -\frac{Z^2/2}{(n_r+l+1)^2} \tag{5.1.16}$$

or

$$E_{n_r l} = -\frac{Z^2}{2n^2}\frac{e^2}{a_0} \tag{5.1.17}$$

with the so-called *principal quantum number*

$$n = n_r + l + 1\,. \tag{5.1.18}$$

Inasmuch as $n_r = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ independently, we have

$$n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{5.1.19}$$

and there are a total number of

$$\sum_{l=0}^{n-1}\sum_{m=-l}^{l} 1 = \sum_{l=0}^{n-1}(2l+1) = n^2 \tag{5.1.20}$$

(orbital) states for given n. In summary, the eigenstates of hydrogen-like atoms are such that

$$\begin{aligned} L_3\big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle &= \big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle\hbar m\,,\\ \boldsymbol{L}^2\big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle &= \big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle\hbar^2 l(l+1)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.21}$$

and

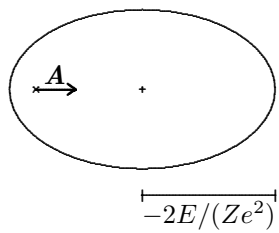
$$H\big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle = \big|n_r,l,m\big\rangle\left(-\frac{Z^2}{2n^2}\frac{e^2}{a_0}\right) \tag{5.1.22}$$

with $n = n_r + l + 1$. Since the energy eigenvalues are negative, these are bound states in the Coulomb potential. The scattering states, for which H has a positive eigenvalue, cannot be found by such an analogy with the two-dimensional oscillator. They need more mathematical machinery than we have at our disposal right now.

The rotational symmetry alone accounts for a multiplicity of $2l+1$ states for each n_r, l pair because the energy cannot depend on the L_3 value, that is, on the quantum number $m = l, l-1, \ldots, -l$ which takes on $2l+1$ different values. In the Coulomb potential, there is, however, an additional degeneracy because the eigenenergies do not depend on n_r and l individually but only on their sum $n_r + l = n - 1$. This indicates that there is an additional dynamical symmetry that is not purely geometrical. We infer that there must therefore also exist another conserved quantity, the generator of the transformation under which H in invariant. Indeed, there is such a conserved quantity; it is the vector

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{A} &= \frac{\boldsymbol{R}}{\big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|} - \frac{1}{2MZe^2}(\boldsymbol{P}\times\boldsymbol{L} - \boldsymbol{L}\times\boldsymbol{P}) \\ &= \frac{\boldsymbol{R}}{\big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|} - \frac{a_0/\hbar^2}{2Z}(\boldsymbol{P}\times\boldsymbol{L} - \boldsymbol{L}\times\boldsymbol{P})\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.23}$$

One name for $\boldsymbol{A}$ is *axis vector*, which refers to its very simple geometrical meaning in classical physics, where the orbits are the familiar ellipses that Kepler* discovered:



Vector $\boldsymbol{A}$ points from the center of the force, located at a focus of the ellipse, to the center of the ellipse, and the length A of $\boldsymbol{A}$ is the eccentricity of the ellipse. For total energy E, the major semiaxis of the ellipse is given

*Johannes KEPLER (1571–1630)

by $-2E/(Ze^2)$, and the distance from focus to center is A times the major semiaxis.

The axis vector — also known as the Laplace*–Runge†–Lenz‡ vector — is conserved for the Coulomb potential because the orbits are *closed*, which is an exceptional situation. In general, the orbits in a central force potential $V(r)$ are not closed in classical mechanics, and then we do not get an additional systematic degeneracy of the eigenvalues of the corresponding quantum system.

5.2 Wave functions

5.2.1 *Two-dimensional harmonic oscillator*

For the two-dimensional harmonic oscillator, we know the wave functions for states with definite energy if they are labeled by the quantum numbers n_1 and n_2 that refer to the cartesian coordinates x_1, x_2. We summarize this knowledge in

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|a_1, a_2\big\rangle &= \big\langle x_1\big|a_1\big\rangle\big\langle x_2\big|a_2\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}\,l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(x_1^2+x_2^2)/l^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\sqrt{2}\,(x_1a_1+x_2a_2)/l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(a_1^2+a_2^2)} \\ &= \sum_{n_1=0}^{\infty}\sum_{n_2=0}^{\infty}\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle\big\langle n_1, n_2\big|a_1, a_2\big\rangle \\ &= \sum_{n_1=0}^{\infty}\sum_{n_2=0}^{\infty}\big\langle x_1, x_2\big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle\frac{a_1^{n_1}}{\sqrt{n_1!}}\frac{a_2^{n_2}}{\sqrt{n_2!}}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.1}$$

which uses the position wave function for coherent states twice, see (3.4.74), and the expansion in powers of a_1 and a_2 can be performed with the aid of the generating functions for the Hermite polynomials, doubling the effort of Exercise 68.

If we wish, however, to find the wave functions to the eigenkets $\big|N, m\big\rangle = \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle$, the common eigenkets of H and L_3 in (3.5.40), then we should use the coherent states for $A_\pm = 2^{-\frac{1}{2}}(A_1 \mp \mathrm{i}A_2)$ instead, and we expect that they fit much better to polar coordinates than to cartesian coordinates. In fact, we know already that $\big\langle s, \phi\big|N, m\big\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}m\phi}$ is a function of s alone, where

*Pierre Simon de Laplace (1749–1827) †Carl David Tolmé Runge (1856–1927)
‡Wilhelm Lenz (1888–1957)

we continue to identify

$$\begin{aligned} \langle s,\phi| &= \langle x_1,x_2| \quad \text{for} \quad x_1+\mathrm{i}x_2 = s\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} \quad \text{with} \quad s>0\,, \\ |N,m\rangle &= |n_+,n_-\rangle \quad \text{for} \quad N=n_++n_- \quad \text{and} \quad m=n_+-n_-\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.2}$$

We saw in Section 4.3 that it is convenient to introduce the radial quantum number n_r in accordance with

$$N = |m| + 2n_r \tag{5.2.3}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} n_r &= \frac{1}{2}\big(N-|m|\big) = \frac{1}{2}\big(n_++n_--|n_+-n_-|\big) \\ &= \mathrm{Min}\{n_+,n_-\} = n_<\,, \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.4}$$

that is, n_r is the smaller one of n_+ and n_-. The larger one of them is

$$\begin{aligned} n_> &= \mathrm{Max}\{n_+,n_-\} = \frac{1}{2}\big(n_++n_-+|n_+-n_-|\big) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\big(N+|m|\big) = n_r+|m| = n_<+|m|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.5}$$

Equivalent ways of labeling the common eigenkets of H and L_3 are thus

$$|N,m\rangle = |n_r,m\rangle = |n_+,n_-\rangle\,, \tag{5.2.6}$$

of which the middle version is perhaps the most natural one.

In view of (3.5.33),

$$A_\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(A_1 \mp \mathrm{i}A_2)\,, \tag{5.2.7}$$

we have a corresponding choice for the labeling of the coherent states,

$$|a_1,a_2\rangle = |a_+,a_-\rangle \quad \text{with} \quad a_\pm = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(a_1 \mp \mathrm{i}a_2)\,. \tag{5.2.8}$$

Then,

$$\frac{1}{2}\big(a_1^2+a_2^2\big) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(a_1-\mathrm{i}a_2)\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(a_1+\mathrm{i}a_2) = a_+a_- \tag{5.2.9}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{2}\,(x_1a_1+x_2a_2) &= x_1(a_++a_-)+x_2(\mathrm{i}a_+-\mathrm{i}a_-) \\ &= (x_1+\mathrm{i}x_2)a_+ + (x_1-\mathrm{i}x_2)a_- \\ &= s\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}a_+ + s\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi}a_-\,, \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.10}$$

and with $x_1^2 + x_2^2 = s^2$, we have therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle s, \phi \big| a_+, a_- \big\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi} l}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(s/l)^2 + (s/l)\left(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} a_+ + \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi} a_-\right) - a_+ a_-} \\ &= \sum_{n_+, n_- = 0}^{\infty} \big\langle s, \phi \big| n_+, n_- \big\rangle \frac{a_+^{n_+} a_-^{n_-}}{\sqrt{n_+!\, n_-!}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.11}$$

We are thus asked to expand the exponential functions in powers of a_+ and a_-, which we do with the aid of this generating function

$$\mathrm{e}^{-xy + \alpha x + \beta y} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^j y^k}{j!} (-1)^k \alpha^{j-k} \mathrm{L}_k^{(j-k)}(\alpha\beta) \tag{5.2.12}$$

for the *Laguerre polynomials* that can be defined by their Rodrigues* formula

$$\mathrm{L}_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{1}{n!} x^{-\alpha}\, \mathrm{e}^{x} \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\right)^n x^{n+\alpha}\, \mathrm{e}^{-x}\,, \tag{5.2.13}$$

for example. One calls $\mathrm{L}_n^{(\alpha)}(\ )$ the Laguerre polynomial of degree n and index α. The index can be any complex number, but usually one prefers it to be real and larger than -1.

In the generating function (5.2.12), the index takes on all integer values, positive and negative, but in fact we can always have it nonnegative when picking out particular powers of x and y, because the left-hand side is invariant under the joint interchange of $x \leftrightarrow y$ and $\alpha \leftrightarrow \beta$, so that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-xy + \alpha x + \beta y} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{y^j x^k}{j!} (-1)^k \beta^{j-k} \mathrm{L}_k^{(j-k)}(\alpha\beta) \tag{5.2.14}$$

is an equivalent way of expanding in powers of x and y.

In our application, we wish to expand

$$\big\langle s, \phi \big| a_+, a_- \big\rangle \sqrt{\pi}\, l\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(s/l)^2} = \mathrm{e}^{-a_+ a_- + (s/l)\left(a_+ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} + a_- \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi}\right)} \tag{5.2.15}$$

and have a choice between

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha = \beta = \frac{s}{l} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{(i)} \quad & x = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} a_+\,, && y = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi} a_- \\ & j = n_+\,, && k = n_- \\ \text{or} \quad \text{(ii)} \quad & x = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi} a_-\,, && y = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} a_+ \\ & j = n_-\,, && k = n_+\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.16}$$

*Benjamin Olinde Rodrigues (1795–1851)

Accordingly,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\big\langle s,\phi\big|a_+,a_-\big\rangle\sqrt{\pi}\,l\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}(s/l)^2}\\
&=\sum_{n_+,n_-=0}^{\infty}\frac{\big(a_+\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\big)^{n_+}\big(a_-\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi}\big)^{n_-}}{n_+!}(-1)^{n_-}x^{n_+-n_-}\mathrm{L}_{n_-}^{(n_+-n_-)}\big(x^2\big)\\
&=\sum_{n_+,n_-=0}^{\infty}\frac{\big(a_-\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi}\big)^{n_-}\big(a_+\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\big)^{n_+}}{n_-!}(-1)^{n_+}x^{n_--n_+}\mathrm{L}_{n_+}^{(n_--n_+)}\big(x^2\big)\qquad(5.2.17)
\end{aligned}$$

with $x=\dfrac{s}{l}$, where the ϕ dependence is given by

$$\Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\Big)^{n_+-n_-}=\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}\qquad(5.2.18)$$

in both versions, as it should be. When picking out the term proportional to $a_+^{n_+}a_-^{n_-}$ as required by (5.2.11), we exploit the choice between the two versions in (5.2.17) such that the index of the Laguerre polynomial is non-negative. That is to say, we use the upper version for $n_+>n_-$, and the lower version for $n_+<n_-$, and it does not matter which one if $n_+=n_-$. With this convention, we have

$$\sum_{n_+,n_-=0}^{\infty}\frac{a_+^{n_+}a_-^{n_-}}{n_>!}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(n_+-n_-)\phi}(-1)^{n_<}\,x^{n_>-n_<}\,\mathrm{L}_{n_<}^{(n_>-n_<)}\big(x^2\big)\qquad(5.2.19)$$

as a common way of writing the two series in (5.2.17). As a consequence,

$$\begin{aligned}
\big\langle s,\phi\big|n_+,n_-\big\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(s/l)^2}\sqrt{\frac{n_<!}{n_>!}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(n_+-n_-)\phi}\\
\times(-1)^{n_<}\Big(\frac{s}{l}\Big)^{n_>-n_<}\mathrm{L}_{n_<}^{(n_>-n_<)}\bigg(\Big(\frac{s}{l}\Big)^2\bigg)\qquad(5.2.20)
\end{aligned}$$

or, with $n_+-n_-=m$, $n_>-n_<=|m|$, $n_<=n_r$, and $n_>=n_r+|m|$,

$$\begin{aligned}
\big\langle s,\phi\big|n_r,m\big\rangle=\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\frac{(-1)^{n_r}}{l}\sqrt{\frac{2\,n_r!}{(n_r+|m|)!}}\\
\times\Big(\frac{s}{l}\Big)^{|m|}\mathrm{L}_{n_r}^{(|m|)}\bigg(\Big(\frac{s}{l}\Big)^2\bigg)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(s/l)^2}\,.\qquad(5.2.21)
\end{aligned}$$

The convention of having a factor $1/\sqrt{2\pi}$ with the azimuthal wave functions $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}$ originates in the observation that in this way the ϕ parts of the wave

functions, the azimuthal wave functions, are orthonormal by themselves,

$$\int\limits_{(2\pi)} \mathrm{d}\phi \, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}m'\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} = \delta_{mm'} \,, \tag{5.2.22}$$

where we integrate over any 2π interval. And the radial wave functions $S_{n_r,|m|}(s)$ in

$$\big\langle s, \phi \big| n_r, m \big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} S_{n_r,|m|}(s) \tag{5.2.23}$$

are then such that

$$\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}s \, s \, S_{n_r,|m|}(s) S_{n'_r,|m|}(s) = \delta_{n_r n'_r} \tag{5.2.24}$$

states their orthonormality.

5.2.2 *Hydrogenic atoms*

What is called $S_{n_r,|m|}(s)$ here differs from $\psi_{Nm}(s)$ in (4.3.10) by just the $1/\sqrt{2\pi}$ factor that we choose to associate with the ϕ dependence. Therefore, $\sqrt{s} S_{n_r,|m|}(s)$ obeys the differential equation (4.3.15) for $\sqrt{s}\psi_{Nm}(s)$, where

$$y = \sqrt{\frac{M\omega}{\hbar}} s = \frac{s}{l} \,. \tag{5.2.25}$$

The substitution of (5.1.8), namely

$$\left(\frac{s}{l}\right)^2 \to 2\lambda y \quad \text{with} \quad y = \frac{r}{a_0} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda = \frac{Z}{n} \,, \tag{5.2.26}$$

turns it into the radial part of the corresponding wave function for the Coulomb potential. With proper normalization, this eventually gives

$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{r} \big| n, l, m \big\rangle = R_{nl}(r) \mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta, \phi) \tag{5.2.27}$$

with the radial wave functions

$$\begin{aligned} R_{nl}(r) = (-1)^{n-l-1} \frac{2}{n^2} \left(\frac{Z}{a_0}\right)^{3/2} \sqrt{\frac{(n-l-1)!}{(n+l)!}} \left(\frac{2Zr}{na_0}\right)^l \\ \times \mathrm{L}^{(2l+1)}_{n-l-1}\left(\frac{2Zr}{na_0}\right) \mathrm{e}^{-Zr/(na_0)} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.28}$$

where we have chosen the usual phase conventions.

The orthonormality relation for the radial wave functions is here

$$\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2\, R_{nl}(r) R_{n'l}(r) = \delta_{nn'} \tag{5.2.29}$$

and one refers to

$$D_{nl}(r) \equiv r^2 \big|R_{nl}(r)\big|^2 \tag{5.2.30}$$

as the *radial density*, a term suggested by the fact that

$$\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, D_{nl}(r) = 1\,. \tag{5.2.31}$$

The angular part of the hydrogenic wave functions is given by the factor $\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)$, which are the familiar *spherical harmonics*, a term coined by Kelvin.* They can be defined by

$$\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi) = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \Theta_{lm}(\theta)\,, \tag{5.2.32}$$

where

$$\Theta_{lm}(\theta) = \sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{2}\frac{(l+m)!}{(l-m)!}}\, \sin(\theta)^{-m} \left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\cos(\theta)}\right)^{l-m} \frac{\big(\cos(\theta)^2-1\big)^l}{2^l l!} \tag{5.2.33}$$

can be expressed as an *associated Legendre*† *function*. The Legendre functions are closely related to the *Legendre polynomials* $\mathrm{P}_l(x)$ that can be defined by their generating function,

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-2tx+t^2}} = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} t^l \mathrm{P}_l(x)\,, \tag{5.2.34}$$

for example. For further details, consult any text on mathematical methods for physicists, where special functions like these are treated. We shall be content with noting the orthonormality relation

$$\int_{(2\pi)} \mathrm{d}\phi \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\, \sin(\theta)\, \mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)^* \mathrm{Y}_{l'm'}(\theta,\phi) = \delta_{ll'}\delta_{mm'}\,. \tag{5.2.35}$$

*William THOMSON, first Baron Kelvin (1824–1907)
†Adrien Marie LEGENDRE (1752–1833)

Harkening back to Exercise 84, we observe that Y_{lm} obeys the differential equation

$$-\left(\frac{1}{\sin(\theta)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\sin(\theta)\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}+\frac{1}{\sin(\theta)^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)=l(l+1)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)\,, \tag{5.2.36}$$

which is the eigenvalue equation for $\boldsymbol{L}^2$, and also

$$\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)=m\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)\,, \tag{5.2.37}$$

which is the eigenvalue equation for L_3.

Also worth knowing is the symmetry property

$$\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)=\mathrm{Y}_{l,-m}(-\theta,-\phi)\,, \tag{5.2.38}$$

which one can easily verify for $l=0,1,2$ by a quick look at

$$\begin{aligned}
l=0:\quad & \mathrm{Y}_{00}=\sqrt{\frac{1}{4\pi}}\,;\\
l=1:\quad & \mathrm{Y}_{10}=\sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}\cos(\theta)=\sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}\frac{x_3}{r}\,,\\
& \mathrm{Y}_{1\pm1}=\mp\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\sin(\theta)\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}\phi}=\mp\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\frac{x_1\pm\mathrm{i}x_2}{r}\,;\\
l=2:\quad & \mathrm{Y}_{20}=\sqrt{\frac{5}{16\pi}}\big(3\cos(\theta)^2-1\big)=\sqrt{\frac{5}{16\pi}}\frac{3x_3^2-r^2}{r^2}\,,\\
& \mathrm{Y}_{2\pm1}=\mp\sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}}\cos(\theta)\sin(\theta)\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}\phi}=\mp\sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}}\frac{(x_1\pm x_2)x_3}{r^2}\,,\\
& \mathrm{Y}_{2\pm2}=\sqrt{\frac{15}{32\pi}}\sin(\theta)^2\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm2\mathrm{i}\phi}=\sqrt{\frac{15}{32\pi}}\frac{(x_1\pm\mathrm{i}x_2)^2}{r^2}\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{5.2.39}$$

The versions involving the cartesian coordinates recall that

$$x_1\pm\mathrm{i}x_2=r\sin(\theta)\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}\phi}\quad\text{and}\quad x_3=r\cos(\theta) \tag{5.2.40}$$

and hint at the so-called *solid harmonics*, essentially linear combinations of $r^l\mathrm{Y}_{lm}$ with common l, that can be systematically regarded as polynomials of the form

$$(\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})^l\quad\text{with}\quad\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{a}=0\,, \tag{5.2.41}$$

where $\boldsymbol{a}$ is a *complex* vector such as $\boldsymbol{a} = \boldsymbol{e}_1 + \mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{e}_2 \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \mathrm{i} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$. The basic observation in this context is

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 (\boldsymbol{a} \cdot \boldsymbol{r})^l = 0\,, \tag{5.2.42}$$

and this can serve as a starting point for a systematic study of the $\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$.

We are here content with recognizing the central statement, which we owe to Rayleigh,* namely the generating function

$$\frac{1}{l!}(\boldsymbol{a} \cdot \boldsymbol{r})^l = r^l \sum_{m=-l}^{l} \frac{\alpha_+^{l+m} \alpha_-^{l-m}}{\sqrt{(l+m)!(l-m)!}} \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{2l+1}}\, \mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta, \phi)\,, \tag{5.2.43}$$

where α_+ and α_- are arbitrary complex numbers that parameterize the cartesian components of $\boldsymbol{a}$,

$$\boldsymbol{a} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}\big(\alpha_-^2 - \alpha_+^2\big) \\ \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}}\big(\alpha_-^2 + \alpha_+^2\big) \\ \alpha_+ \alpha_- \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.2.44}$$

and $\boldsymbol{r}$ has the usual components of spherical coordinates,

$$\boldsymbol{r} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} r \begin{pmatrix} \sin(\theta)\cos(\phi) \\ \sin(\theta)\sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\theta) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.2.45}$$

which repeats (5.2.40) of course. All properties of the spherical harmonics — for example, the orthonormality relation (5.2.35) — are contained in this generating function and can be derived from it rather easily.

*John William STRUTT, third Baron Rayleigh (1842–1919)

Chapter 6

Approximation Methods

6.1 Hellmann–Feynman theorem

In (5.1.17), we found the *Bohr energies*

$$E_n = -\frac{Z^2}{2n^2}\frac{e^2}{a_0} \quad \text{with} \quad a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{Me^2} \tag{6.1.1}$$

for hydrogenic atoms, with the principal quantum number $n = n_r + l + 1 = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ that labels the *Bohr shells*. The potential energy in the Hamilton operator (5.1.1),

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{R}\,, \quad R = \big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|\,, \tag{6.1.2}$$

is proportional to Z, whereas $E_n \propto Z^2$. This suggests that $R \propto 1/Z$, which is physically reasonable because a larger nuclear charge is expected to attract the electron more strongly and thus the size of the orbits should shrink with increasing Z.

We can make this statement more quantitative by calculating the expectation value of R with the aid of the wave functions (5.2.28), but there is a much simpler and more instructive way of going about this: We shall use the Hellmann*–Feynman† theorem, which we first state in a general context.

Consider a Hamilton operator H_λ that depends on a parameter λ and its λ dependent eigenstates and eigenvalues,

$$H_\lambda\big|E_\lambda, \ldots\big\rangle = \big|E_\lambda, \ldots\big\rangle E_\lambda\,, \tag{6.1.3}$$

*Hans Hellmann (1903–1938) †Richard Phillips Feynman (1918–1988)

where the ellipsis indicates other quantum numbers (such as l, m for the angular momentum) that do not depend on the parameter λ. Differentiation with respect to λ establishes

$$\frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle + H_\lambda\frac{\partial\big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle}{\partial\lambda} = \frac{\partial\big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle}{\partial\lambda}E_\lambda + \big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle\frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\,. \tag{6.1.4}$$

Now multiply by the corresponding bra from the left and get

$$\big\langle E_\lambda,\ldots\big|\frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle = \frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda} \tag{6.1.5}$$

after taking into account that

$$\big\langle E_\lambda,\ldots\big|H = E_\lambda\big\langle E_\lambda,\ldots\big| \quad\text{and}\quad \big\langle E_\lambda,\ldots\big|E_\lambda,\ldots\big\rangle = 1\,. \tag{6.1.6}$$

This, then, is the *Hellmann–Feynman theorem*:

$$\left\langle\frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\right\rangle = \frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda} \tag{6.1.7}$$

for expectation values that are taken with an eigenstate of H_λ to energy E_λ; that is, you find the derivative of E_λ with respect to parameter λ as the expectation value of the λ derivative of the Hamilton operator.

In the Hamilton operator (6.1.2) we have M and Z as parameters; they appear in the Bohr energies of (6.1.1) such that $E_n \propto Z^2M$. Accordingly, the Hellmann–Feynman theorem tells us that

$$Z\frac{\partial}{\partial Z}E_n = 2E_n = \left\langle -\frac{Ze^2}{R}\right\rangle = E_{\rm pot} \tag{6.1.8}$$

and

$$M\frac{\partial}{\partial M}E_n = E_n = -\left\langle\frac{\boldsymbol{P}^2}{2M}\right\rangle = -E_{\rm kin}\,. \tag{6.1.9}$$

Or

$$E_{\rm pot} = 2E\,, \qquad E_{\rm kin} = -E \tag{6.1.10}$$

for such a Coulomb system. Actually, this statement is generally true for many-particle systems when all components have Coulomb interactions between them.

We are particularly interested in the statement (6.1.8) about the potential energy because it implies

$$\left\langle\frac{1}{R}\right\rangle = \frac{Z}{n^2a_0} \tag{6.1.11}$$

so that, indeed, $R \cong n^2 a_0/Z \propto 1/Z$ in the nth Bohr shell. Note that this differs from what the wave function (5.2.28) seems to suggest, namely that $R \sim n a_0/Z$, linear in n rather than quadratic. One must take the detailed structure of the Laguerre polynomials into account to find the extra factor of n from the wave functions. Fortunately, we do not need to do this because the Hellmann–Feynman theorem saves us the trouble.

In the harmonic oscillator,

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2\,,$$
$$H\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n\big\rangle\hbar\omega(n+\tfrac{1}{2})\,, \tag{6.1.12}$$

we have the parameters M and ω, and the energy eigenvalues $\hbar\omega(n+\frac{1}{2})$. Thus, considering the M dependence,

$$M\frac{\partial}{\partial M}E = -\left\langle \frac{1}{2M}P^2 \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 \right\rangle \tag{6.1.13}$$

or, since $E = \hbar\omega\big(n+\frac{1}{2}\big)$ does not involve M,

$$0 = -E_{\rm kin} + E_{\rm pot}\,, \tag{6.1.14}$$

and considering the ω dependence,

$$\omega\frac{\partial}{\partial\omega}E = E = 2\left\langle \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 \right\rangle = 2E_{\rm pot}\,. \tag{6.1.15}$$

Therefore,

$$E_{\rm kin} = E_{\rm pot} = \frac{1}{2}E \tag{6.1.16}$$

applies to a harmonic oscillator. The argument here is given for a harmonic oscillator in one dimension but it extends immediately to two or more dimensions. Note that we did not subtract $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$ (or $\hbar\omega$ in two dimensions, $\frac{3}{2}\hbar\omega$ in three dimension, ...) for the sake of a simple result.

We have seen here two examples of a more general result, namely

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Coulomb: potential energy } \propto \frac{1}{R}\,,\ E_{\rm kin} = -E\,,\ E_{\rm pot} = 2E\,,\\ &\text{Oscillator: potential energy } \propto R^2\,,\ E_{\rm kin} = \frac{1}{2}E\,,\ E_{\rm pot} = \frac{1}{2}E\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.1.17}$$

What about other powers of R?

6.2 Virial theorem

The answer is given by the *virial theorem*, a term coined by Clausius.* We state it for Hamilton operators of the typical form

$$H = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2}_{\substack{\text{kinetic}\\ \text{energy}}} + \underbrace{V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)}_{\substack{\text{potential}\\ \text{energy}}} \tag{6.2.1}$$

and later specialize to potentials $V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)$ that are powers of $R = \big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|$.

First, recall (or note) that the expectation value of a commutator with H in an eigenstate of H always vanishes,

$$\big\langle E,\ldots\big|[A,H]\big|E,\ldots\big\rangle = \big\langle E,\ldots\big|\big(\underset{\downarrow\ E}{A\,H}\ -\ \underset{\downarrow\ E}{H\,A}\big)\big|E,\ldots\big\rangle = 0 \tag{6.2.2}$$

for *any* operator A. We apply this to

$$A = \boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\,, \tag{6.2.3}$$

for which

$$\begin{aligned}[A,H] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{R}}{\mathrm{d}t}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} + \mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{P}}{\mathrm{d}t}\\ &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\boldsymbol{P}}{M}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} + \mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\Big(-\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big)\end{aligned} \tag{6.2.4}$$

so that

$$\left\langle\frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{P}^2\right\rangle = \Big\langle\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle \tag{6.2.5}$$

or

$$E_{\mathrm{kin}} = \frac{1}{2}\Big\langle\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle \tag{6.2.6}$$

for *any* energy eigenstate.

For potentials that are powers of R,

$$V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) = \kappa\big|\boldsymbol{R}\big|^n = \kappa R^n \tag{6.2.7}$$

with some strength parameter κ, we have

$$\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) = nV\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) \tag{6.2.8}$$

*Rudolf Julius Emanuel (born Rudolf Gottlieb) CLAUSIUS (1822–1888)

and so get

$$E_{\rm kin} = \frac{n}{2} E_{\rm pot}\,. \tag{6.2.9}$$

Together with $E = E_{\rm kin} + E_{\rm pot}$, it tells us that

$$E_{\rm kin} = \frac{n}{n+2} E\,, \quad E_{\rm pot} = \frac{2}{n+2} E\,. \tag{6.2.10}$$

For $n = -1$ and $n = 2$, this reproduces the results for Coulomb systems, such as hydrogenic atoms, and harmonic oscillators in (6.1.17),

$$\begin{aligned} n = -1 :&\quad E_{\rm kin} = -E\,,\ E_{\rm pot} = 2E\,;\ E_{\rm kin} = -\frac{1}{2} E_{\rm pot}\,, \\ n = 2 :&\quad E_{\rm kin} = \frac{1}{2} E\,,\ E_{\rm pot} = \frac{1}{2} E\,;\ E_{\rm kin} = E_{\rm pot}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.11}$$

In another way of looking at this, we consider small changes of the kets and bras with which the expectation values are taken,

$$\big|\,\big\rangle \to \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} \big|\,\big\rangle\,, \quad \big\langle\,\big| \to \big\langle\,\big| \,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\,, \tag{6.2.12}$$

where $G = G^\dagger$ is the hermitian generator of the unitary transformation and ϵ is a small parameter. We keep terms up to ϵ^2 only,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} &= 1 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon G - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 G^2\,, \\ \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} &= 1 - \mathrm{i}\epsilon G - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 G^2\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.13}$$

as they will be all we need in this context. The ϵ-dependent expectation value of H is then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle H \rangle_\epsilon &= \Big\langle\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} H\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} \Big\rangle \\ &= \Big\langle \Big(1 - \mathrm{i}\epsilon G - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 G^2\Big) H \Big(1 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon G - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 G^2\Big) \Big\rangle \\ &= \langle H \rangle + \epsilon \,\big\langle \mathrm{i}[H, G] \big\rangle \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 \Big\langle \big(G^2 H - 2GHG + HG^2\big) \Big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.14}$$

If we take the expectation value in an eigenstate of H to eigenvalue E, $|\,\rangle = |E, \ldots\rangle$, we have

$$\langle H \rangle_{\,\epsilon} = E + \frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2 \Big\langle \big(2GHG - HG^2 - G^2 H\big) \Big\rangle + O(\epsilon^3)\,, \tag{6.2.15}$$

where the linear term, $\propto \epsilon$, is absent since

$$\big\langle E,\ldots\big|\mathrm{i}[H,G]\big|E,\ldots\big\rangle = 0\,, \tag{6.2.16}$$

which repeats (6.2.2) for $A = G$. The conclusion is that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\epsilon}\,\langle H\rangle_\epsilon\bigg|_{\epsilon\,=\,0} = 0\,. \tag{6.2.17}$$

We exploit this now for the unitary *scaling transformation*

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{P} &\to \mathrm{e}^{\epsilon}\boldsymbol{P} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\boldsymbol{P}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\,,\\ \boldsymbol{R} &\to \mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon}\boldsymbol{R} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\boldsymbol{R}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.2.18}$$

(see Exercises 73 and 74) with

$$G = \frac{1}{2\hbar}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} + \boldsymbol{P}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\big) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{3}{2}\mathrm{i}\,, \tag{6.2.19}$$

so that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}H\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G} = \frac{1}{2M}\big(\mathrm{e}^{\epsilon}\boldsymbol{P}\big)^2 + V\big(\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon}\boldsymbol{R}\big) \tag{6.2.20}$$

and

$$\langle H\rangle_{\,\epsilon} = \mathrm{e}^{2\epsilon}\bigg\langle\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2\bigg\rangle + \Big\langle V\big(\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon}\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle\,. \tag{6.2.21}$$

Now differentiate with respect to ϵ,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\epsilon}\,\langle H\rangle_\epsilon\Big|_{\epsilon=0} = 2E_{\mathrm{kin}} - \Big\langle\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle = 0\,, \tag{6.2.22}$$

and arrive again at the statement of the virial theorem,

$$E_{\mathrm{kin}} = \frac{1}{2}\Big\langle\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle = -\frac{1}{2}\Big\langle\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{F}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big\rangle\,, \tag{6.2.23}$$

where the latter version uses the force operator

$$\boldsymbol{F}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) = -\boldsymbol{\nabla}V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{P},V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\big]\,. \tag{6.2.24}$$

What can we say about the term $\propto \epsilon^2$ in (6.2.15)? We write

$$\begin{aligned}&2GHG - HG^2 - G^2H\\ &= 2G(H-E)G - (H-E)G^2 - G^2(H-E)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.2.25}$$

which is a simple but useful identity because if we now take the expectation value $\langle E,\ldots|\cdots|E,\ldots\rangle$ in an eigenstate of H, the last two terms vanish, and so we have

$$\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2\Big\langle\big(2GHG-HG^2-G^2H\big)\Big\rangle=\epsilon^2\big\langle E,\gamma\big|G(H-E)G\big|E,\gamma\big\rangle\,, \tag{6.2.26}$$

where the symbol γ stands for all the other quantum numbers that we might need to specify in the case of an energetic degeneracy. Using the completeness of the eigenstates of H,

$$H-E=\sum_{E',\gamma'}\big|E',\gamma'\big\rangle(E'-E)\big\langle E',\gamma'\big|\,, \tag{6.2.27}$$

we further have

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2\Big\langle\big(2GHG-HG^2-G^2H\big)\Big\rangle\\&=\epsilon^2\sum_{E',\gamma'}(E'-E)\underbrace{\Big|\big\langle E,\gamma\big|G\big|E',\gamma'\big\rangle\Big|^2}_{\geq 0}\,.\end{aligned} \tag{6.2.28}$$

The summation is over all eigenvalues E' of H (and, if necessary, over the γ' quantum numbers), whereby the terms with $E'=E$ do not contribute. This implies that the ϵ^2 term is nonnegative if E is the smallest eigenvalue of H, that is, if E is the ground-state energy.

The conclusion is that $\big\langle\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}H\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon G}\big\rangle$ has a minimum at $\epsilon=0$ if the expectation value is taken in the ground state of H. For all other eigenstates of H, we have an extremum at $\epsilon=0$, but it could be either a minimum or a maximum, depending on the value of the sum over E' and γ'.

6.3 Rayleigh–Ritz variational method

Any ket $|\,\rangle$ can be related to the ket $|E_0\rangle$ of the (nondegenerate) ground state,

$$\big|\,\big\rangle=U\big|E_0\big\rangle\,, \tag{6.3.1}$$

by a suitable unitary tranformation U (which, incidentally, is not unique). It follows that

$$\langle H\rangle\geq E_0 \tag{6.3.2}$$

for *any* ket $|\,\rangle$. This is known as the *Rayleigh–Ritz* variational method*. It is more generally true than the above derivation suggests because the limitation to ϵ^2 terms is not necessary. We just need to use the completeness of the $|E,\gamma\rangle$ states in

$$\langle H\rangle = \sum_{E,\gamma} E \left|\langle E,\gamma|\,\rangle\right|^2 \tag{6.3.3}$$

and the fact that $E \geq E_0$ for all E,

$$\langle H\rangle \geq \sum_{E,\gamma} E_0 \left|\langle E,\gamma|\,\rangle\right|^2 = E_0\,. \tag{6.3.4}$$

This offers a very convenient method for obtaining quite good estimates of ground-state energies without actually solving the Schrödinger eigenvalue equation.

As an example, let us consider a one-dimensional system with a constant restoring force, for which the Hamilton operator is

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + F|X|\,. \tag{6.3.5}$$

A trial ket $|\,\rangle$ is specified by its *trial wave function* in position,

$$\psi(x) = \langle x|\,\rangle \tag{6.3.6}$$

which is normalized, $\langle\,|\,\rangle = 1$ or

$$\int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2 = 1\,. \tag{6.3.7}$$

The Rayleigh–Ritz method then exploits

$$\int \mathrm{d}x \left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left|\frac{\partial\psi(x)}{\partial x}\right|^2 + F|x|\,\big|\psi(x)\big|^2\right) \geq E_0\,, \tag{6.3.8}$$

where E_0 is the ground-state energy of the Hamilton operator that we are considering. The choice of trial function is usually dictated by (i) our intuition about the shape of the ground-state wave function and (ii) practical considerations; after all, we want to be able to execute the required integrations. Therefore, the trial wave function should be reasonably simple.

So, why not try

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{\kappa}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa|x|}\,, \quad \kappa > 0\,, \tag{6.3.9}$$

*Walther RITZ (1878–1909)

with an adjustable parameter κ? This gives

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{kin}} &= \left\langle \frac{1}{2M} P^2 \right\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \int \mathrm{d}x \left| \frac{\partial \psi(x)}{\partial x} \right|^2 \\ &= \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \int \mathrm{d}x \left| -\sqrt{\kappa^3}\, \mathrm{sgn}\,(x)\, \mathrm{e}^{-\kappa|x|} \right|^2 \\ &= \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \kappa^2 \underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x\, \kappa\, \mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa|x|}}_{= \int \mathrm{d}x\, |\psi(x)|^2 = 1} = \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M} \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.10}$$

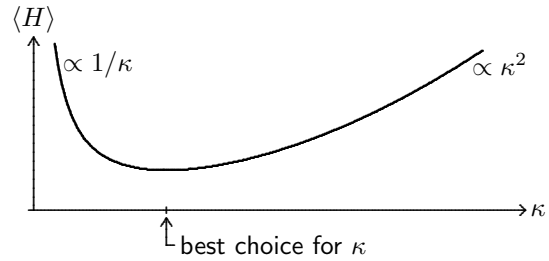
for the kinetic energy and

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{pot}} &= \left\langle F|X| \right\rangle = F \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x| \left|\psi(x)\right|^2 \\ &= F\kappa \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x|\, \mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa|x|} \\ &= F\kappa \left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa} \right) \underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}x\, \mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa|x|}}_{= \kappa^{-1} \int \mathrm{d}x\, |\psi(x)|^2 = \kappa^{-1}} \\ &= F\kappa \left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa} \right) \frac{1}{\kappa} = \frac{F}{2\kappa} \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.11}$$

for the potential energy. Taken together, we have

$$\langle H \rangle = E_{\text{kin}} + E_{\text{pot}} = \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M} + \frac{F}{2\kappa} \geq E_0 \tag{6.3.12}$$

and this inequality must be true irrespective of the value we choose for κ on the left:



(6.3.13)

The best choice for κ is thus the value for which the left-hand side gives the *lowest upper bound* on the ground-state energy E_0. We differentiate with

respect to κ,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\kappa}\langle H\rangle = \frac{\hbar^2}{M}\kappa - \frac{F}{2\kappa^2}\,, \tag{6.3.14}$$

which has to vanish for the best choice for κ. Accordingly,

$$\kappa = \left(\frac{MF}{2\hbar^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.15}$$

is the optimal κ value. For this κ, then,

$$E_{\rm kin} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{MF}{2\hbar^2}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{5}{3}}\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.16}$$

and

$$E_{\rm pot} = \frac{1}{2}F\left(\frac{2\hbar^2}{MF}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}, \tag{6.3.17}$$

giving

$$E_0 \le \langle H\rangle = 3\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{5}{3}}\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}. \tag{6.3.18}$$

The upper bound thus found exceeds the actual ground-state energy

$$E_0 = 0.80862\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.19}$$

by almost 17%, which is a very poor performance for a variational estimate. So, to not lose face, we do not tell anybody and try to do better.

Part of the procedure is the choice of the best scale, the choice of the optimal value for κ. Let us be more systematic about this from the outset by considering not one particular trial function but a whole family of them,

$$\langle x|\,\rangle = C\psi(\kappa x) \tag{6.3.20}$$

with the normalizing prefactor such that

$$1 = \langle\,|\,\rangle = \int \mathrm{d}x\,\big|C\psi(\kappa x)\big|^2 = \frac{1}{\kappa}|C|^2\int \mathrm{d}y\,\big|\psi(y)\big|^2 \tag{6.3.21}$$

(substitute $\kappa x = y$, $\kappa\,\mathrm{d}x = \mathrm{d}y$) or

$$\frac{\kappa}{|C|^2} = \int \mathrm{d}y\,\big|\psi(y)\big|^2\,. \tag{6.3.22}$$

For the kinetic energy, we now have

$$E_{\text{kin}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M}|C|^2 \int \mathrm{d}x \left|\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\psi(\kappa x)\right|^2 = \frac{\hbar^2}{2M}|C|^2\kappa \int \mathrm{d}y \left|\frac{\mathrm{d}\psi(y)}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|^2$$
$$= \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M}\frac{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\frac{\mathrm{d}\psi(y)}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|^2}{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2}, \tag{6.3.23}$$

and we get

$$E_{\text{pot}} = F|C|^2 \int \mathrm{d}x\, |x|\, \left|\psi(\kappa x)\right|^2 = F|C|^2\frac{1}{\kappa^2}\int \mathrm{d}y\, |y| \left|\psi(y)\right|^2$$
$$= \frac{F}{\kappa}\frac{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y\, |y|\, \left|\psi(y)\right|^2}{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2} \tag{6.3.24}$$

for the potential energy. Together, they give us the upper bound on E_0,

$$E_0 \leq \langle H\rangle = E_{\text{kin}} + E_{\text{pot}}$$
$$= \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M}\underbrace{\frac{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\frac{\mathrm{d}\psi(y)}{\mathrm{d}y}\right|^2}{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y|\psi(y)|^2}}_{=\boxed{\mathbf{1}}} + \frac{F}{\kappa}\underbrace{\frac{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y\, |y|\, \left|\psi(y)\right|^2}{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2}}_{=\boxed{\mathbf{2}}}$$
$$= \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M}\boxed{\mathbf{1}} + \frac{F}{\kappa}\boxed{\mathbf{2}} \tag{6.3.25}$$

and we find the best choice for κ by differentiation as we did above. So, for the optimal κ value,

$$\frac{\hbar^2\kappa}{M}\boxed{\mathbf{1}} - \frac{F}{\kappa^2}\boxed{\mathbf{2}} = 0 \tag{6.3.26}$$

with the consequence

$$\kappa = \left(\frac{MF}{\hbar^2}\frac{\boxed{\mathbf{2}}}{\boxed{\mathbf{1}}}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.27}$$

so that

$$E_{\text{kin}} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\boxed{\mathbf{1}}\boxed{\mathbf{2}}^2\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.28}$$

and

$$E_{\text{pot}} = \left(\frac{\hbar^2 F^2}{M} \boxed{\mathbf{1}}\boxed{\mathbf{2}}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.29}$$

for this optimally chosen κ.

Taking everything together, we have

$$E_0 \leq \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{\hbar^2 F^2}{M} \boxed{\mathbf{1}}\boxed{\mathbf{2}}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \tag{6.3.30}$$

or

$$\frac{E_0}{\left(\hbar^2 F^2/M\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}} \leq \frac{3}{2} \frac{\left(\int \mathrm{d}y \left| \frac{\mathrm{d}\psi(y)}{\mathrm{d}y} \right|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \left(\int \mathrm{d}y \, |y| \, |\psi(y)|^2 \right)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{\int \mathrm{d}y |\psi(y)|^2} \,. \tag{6.3.31}$$

In this form, both the normalization of $C\psi(\kappa x)$ to unit integral of its squared modulus and the optimal choice of the scale are built into the functional on the right, which is thus *scale invariant*. This is to say that the right-hand side gives the same values for, say,

$$\psi(y) = 2\,\mathrm{e}^{-4|y|} \quad \text{and} \quad \psi(y) = \mathrm{e}^{-3|y|} \,, \tag{6.3.32}$$

the first of which is normalized to $\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2 = 1$, the other not. Accordingly, we need not bother anymore about the normalization and the scale of the trial wave function; both have been taken care of once and for all.

For either one of the wave functions in (6.3.32), we get, of course, the rather poor estimate of (6.3.18). Let us see how we fare with a gaussian trial function instead,

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(y) &= \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}y^2} \,, \\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}y}\psi(y) &= -y\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}y^2} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.33}$$

where the $\frac{1}{2}$ is for convenience (we exploit the scale invariance here). For this $\psi(y)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2 &= \int \mathrm{d}y\, \mathrm{e}^{-y^2} = \sqrt{\pi} \,, \\ \int \mathrm{d}y \left| \frac{\mathrm{d}\psi(y)}{\mathrm{d}y} \right|^2 &= \int \mathrm{d}y\, y^2\, \mathrm{e}^{-y^2} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\pi} \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.34}$$

(use $y^2\,\mathrm{e}^{-y^2} = -\frac{1}{2}y\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}y}\,\mathrm{e}^{-y^2}$ and integrate by parts) and

$$\int \mathrm{d}y\,|y|\,\big|\psi(y)\big|^2 = 2\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}y\,y\,\mathrm{e}^{-y^2} = -\,\mathrm{e}^{-y^2}\Big|_{y\,=\,0}^{\infty} = 1\,. \tag{6.3.35}$$

The resulting estimate for E_0,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{E_0}{\big(\hbar^2F^2/M\big)^{\frac{1}{3}}} &\le \frac{3}{2}\frac{\big(\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\pi}\big)^{\frac{1}{3}}1^{\frac{2}{3}}}{\sqrt{\pi}} = 3\,(16\pi)^{-\frac{1}{3}}\\ &= 0.8129 = 1.0053\times 0.80862\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.3.36}$$

is only 0.53% in excess of the exact value. Another application, to two-electron atoms, is found in Section 6.4.1 of *Perturbed Evolution*.

One can also apply the Rayleigh–Ritz method to excited states, but then one must restrict the trial wave functions. Return to (6.3.3) and note that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle H\rangle &= \sum_{E,\gamma} E\big|\langle E,\gamma|\;\rangle\big|^2\\ &\ge \sum_{E,\gamma} E_1\big|\langle E,\gamma|\;\rangle\big|^2 = E_1\end{aligned} \tag{6.3.37}$$

if $\big|\langle E_0,\gamma|\;\rangle\big|^2 = 0$ so that the term with $E = E_0$ does not contribute. In view of

$$E_0 < E_1 < E_2 < \cdots\,, \tag{6.3.38}$$

ground state ⌋ ⌊ 1st excited state; ⌊ 2nd excited state

all other terms then have $E \ge E_1$ and

$$\langle H\rangle \ge E_1 \quad \text{for} \quad \langle E_0,\gamma|\;\rangle = 0 \tag{6.3.39}$$

follows.

This is, however, of possibly limited use because we do not know the ground-state ket $|E_0,\gamma\rangle$ precisely. But such precise knowledge may not be necessary if we can exploit certain known properties of the ground state to ensure that all trial kets considered are orthogonal to the ground-state ket.

Take the example of the constant restoring force again. The Hamilton operator (6.3.5) has a reflection symmetry, which is to say that it is invariant

under the unitary transformation

$$X \to -X\,, \quad P \to -P\,. \tag{6.3.40}$$

As a consequence, the wave functions of its eigenstates are either even or odd,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{even wave function:} \quad & \big\langle -x\big|E\big\rangle = \big\langle x\big|E\big\rangle\,, \\ \text{odd wave function:} \quad & \big\langle -x\big|E\big\rangle = -\big\langle x\big|E\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.41}$$

and the ground-state wave function will be even. By contrast, the first excited state has an odd wave function, the second excited state is even, and so forth,

$$\big\langle -x\big|E_n\big\rangle = (-1)^n \big\langle x\big|E_n\big\rangle\,. \tag{6.3.42}$$

Now, all odd wave functions are orthogonal to all even wave functions and, therefore, we can enforce $\langle E_0|\ \rangle = 0$ here by restricting $\langle x|\ \rangle$ to odd wave functions. So, if we only allow odd trial functions,

$$\psi(y) = -\psi(-y) \tag{6.3.43}$$

on the right-hand side of inequality (6.3.31), we get an upper bound on $\big(\hbar^2 F^2/M\big)^{-\frac{1}{3}} E_1$.

6.4 Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory

The examples we have met so far, including the constant restoring force of (6.3.5), are of the kind that the eigenkets and eigenvalues of the Hamilton operator can be found exactly. One must appreciate, however, that this situation is an exception, not the rule. Much more typical in applications is the case that we cannot solve the eigenvalue problem exactly, and then one must resort to methods of approximation. The Rayleigh–Ritz variational method is of this kind, but there are also others, which can give, with sufficient effort, approximate solutions of any desired accuracy.

As the first example of such a method, we consider the *Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory*. It applies, in its simplest version, to Hamilton operators that can be split into a "big" part H_0 and a "small" part H_1,

$$H = H_0 + H_1\,, \tag{6.4.1}$$

where the "big" part H_0 has exactly known eigenvalues and eigenkets

$$H_0\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle = \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle E_n^{(0)}\,, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{6.4.2}$$

with *nondegenerate* energies,

$$E_0^{(0)} < E_1^{(0)} < E_2^{(0)} < \cdots\,, \tag{6.4.3}$$

and the "small" part H_1 is difficult to handle exactly. We denote the eigenkets of the full Hamilton operator H by $|n\rangle$ and the eigenvalues by E_n,

$$H\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n\big\rangle E_n\,, \tag{6.4.4}$$

and for later convenience, we normalize the kets $|n\rangle$ such that

$$\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle = 1\,. \tag{6.4.5}$$

By contrast, the unperturbed eigenkets of H_0 are orthonormal as usual,

$$\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|m^{(0)}\big\rangle = \delta_{nm}\,. \tag{6.4.6}$$

We now introduce a hierarchy of approximations by writing

$$\begin{aligned} E_n &= \underset{\substack{\uparrow\\ \text{0th}}}{E_n^{(0)}} + \underset{\substack{\uparrow\\ \text{1st}}}{E_n^{(1)}} + \underset{\substack{\uparrow\\ \text{2nd}}}{E_n^{(2)}} + \cdots\,, \qquad \cdots \text{ order in } H_1 \\ \big|n\big\rangle &= \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(2)}\big\rangle + \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.7}$$

and insert this into the eigenvalue equation (6.4.4) to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} &\big(H_0 + H_1\big)\Big(\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(2)}\big\rangle + \cdots\Big) \\ &= \Big(\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle + \big|n^{(2)}\big\rangle + \cdots\Big)\Big(E_n^{(0)} + E_n^{(1)} + E_n^{(2)} + \cdots\Big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.8}$$

The zeroth-order terms give

$$H_0\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle = \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle E_n^{(0)}\,, \tag{6.4.9}$$

which is nothing new. Now, take the first-order terms and establish

$$H_0\big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle + H_1\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle = \big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle E_n^{(0)} + \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle E_n^{(1)}\,. \tag{6.4.10}$$

In view of the normalization condition (6.4.5), we have

$$1 = \big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle = \underbrace{\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle}_{=1} + \underbrace{\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n^{(1)}\big\rangle + \big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n^{(2)}\big\rangle + \ldots}_{=0} \tag{6.4.11}$$

where the $\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(k)}\rangle$ terms must vanish order by order for $k > 0$, that is,

$$\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle = 0\,,\ \langle n^{(0)}|n^{(2)}\rangle = 0\,,\ \langle n^{(0)}|n^{(3)}\rangle = 0\,,\ \ldots\ . \tag{6.4.12}$$

We multiply the first-order ket equation (6.4.10) by bra $\langle n^{(0)}|$ and get

$$\underbrace{\langle n^{(0)}|H_0|n^{(1)}\rangle}_{=E_n^{(0)}\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle = 0} + \langle n^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle = \underbrace{\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle}_{=0} E_n^{(0)} + \underbrace{\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(0)}\rangle}_{=1} E_n^{(1)}\,, \tag{6.4.13}$$

that is,

$$E_n^{(1)} = \langle n^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle\,, \tag{6.4.14}$$

which is, in fact, the statement of the Hellmann–Feynman theorem.

Then, upon multiplying by bra $\langle m^{(0)}|$ with $m \neq n$,

$$\underbrace{\langle m^{(0)}|H_0}_{=E_m^{(0)}\langle m^{(0)}|}|n^{(1)}\rangle + \langle m^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle = \langle m^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle E_n^{(0)}\,, \tag{6.4.15}$$

we obtain

$$\langle m^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle = -\frac{\langle m^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle}{E_m^{(0)} - E_n^{(0)}}\,. \tag{6.4.16}$$

We combine this with

$$\begin{aligned} |n^{(1)}\rangle &= \sum_m |m^{(0)}\rangle \underbrace{\langle m^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle}_{=0 \quad \text{for} \quad m=n} \\ &= \sum_{m(\neq n)} |m^{(0)}\rangle\langle m^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.17}$$

to get the first-order correction of the ket,

$$|n^{(1)}\rangle = -\sum_{m(\neq n)} |m^{(0)}\rangle \frac{\langle m^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle}{E_m^{(0)} - E_n^{(0)}}\,. \tag{6.4.18}$$

Having found the expressions for the first-order corrections, we turn to the second-order terms in (6.4.8),

$$H_0|n^{(2)}\rangle + H_1|n^{(1)}\rangle = |n^{(2)}\rangle E_n^{(0)} + |n^{(1)}\rangle E_n^{(1)} + |n^{(0)}\rangle E_n^{(2)}\,. \tag{6.4.19}$$

Multiply by bra $\langle n^{(0)}|$ to extract $E_n^{(2)}$,

$$\langle n^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(1)}\rangle = E_n^{(2)}\,, \tag{6.4.20}$$

where we need the first-order correction $\left|n^{(1)}\right\rangle$ of (6.4.18). Thus,

$$E_n^{(2)} = -\sum_{m(\neq n)} \frac{\left|\left\langle m^{(0)}\middle|H_1\middle|n^{(0)}\right\rangle\right|^2}{E_m^{(0)} - E_n^{(0)}}\,. \tag{6.4.21}$$

Here, and in the earlier result (6.4.18) for $\left|n^{(1)}\right\rangle$, it is important that all $E_n^{(0)}$ energies are different because otherwise we are bound to divide by zero eventually.

If $n = 0$, then $E_m^{(0)} - E_n^{(0)} = E_m^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)} > 0$ for all $m \neq 0$ so that

$$E_0^{(2)} = -\sum_{m>0} \frac{\left|\left\langle m^{(0)}\middle|H_1\middle|0^{(0)}\right\rangle\right|^2}{E_m^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}} \leq 0\,. \tag{6.4.22}$$

This says that the second-order correction to the ground-state energy is always negative.

We can understand this fact as a consequence of a Rayleigh–Ritz estimation. Recall that

$$\langle H_0 + H_1\rangle \geq E_0 \tag{6.4.23}$$

for *any* trial ket, in particular then for $\left|0^{(0)}\right\rangle$, the unperturbed ground state, for which

$$\begin{aligned}\langle H_0 + H_1\rangle &= \left\langle 0^{(0)}\middle|H_0\middle|0^{(0)}\right\rangle + \left\langle 0^{(0)}\middle|H_1\middle|0^{(0)}\right\rangle \\ &= E_0^{(0)} + E_0^{(1)}\,.\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.24}$$

So,

$$E_0^{(0)} + E_0^{(1)} \geq E_0 = E_0^{(0)} + E_0^{(1)} + E_0^{(2)} + \cdots\,, \tag{6.4.25}$$

which implies that

$$E_0^{(2)} + \cdots \leq 0\,. \tag{6.4.26}$$

The dominating term is $E_0^{(2)}$ here and, therefore, it must be negative itself: $E_0^{(2)} \leq 0$, indeed.

Here is a simple illustrating example. Consider a harmonic oscillator with a small anharmonic perturbation,

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X^2 - \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega + \lambda\hbar\omega\left(\frac{X}{l}\right)^4 \tag{6.4.27}$$

or, after introducing the ladder operators of Section 3.4.1,

$$H = \underbrace{\hbar\omega A^\dagger A}_{=H_0} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^4}_{=H_1}, \tag{6.4.28}$$

where we measure the strength of the perturbation by the (small) dimensionless parameter λ. The unperturbed states are the eigenstates of $H_0 = \hbar\omega A^\dagger A$, so they are the familiar Fock states,

$$\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} A^{\dagger n} \underbrace{\big|0^{(0)}\big\rangle}_{\text{oscillator ground state}} \tag{6.4.29}$$

and

$$H_1 = \frac{1}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^4 = \frac{1}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^2\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^2. \tag{6.4.30}$$

Since $A^\dagger$, A are the ladder operators for the unperturbed states $\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^2\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle &= \Big(A^{\dagger 2} + A^\dagger A + AA^\dagger + A^2\Big)\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\ &= \big|(n+2)^{(0)}\big\rangle\sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)} + \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle(2n+1) \\ &\quad + \big|(n-2)^{(0)}\big\rangle\sqrt{n(n-1)}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.31}$$

and this now gives us

$$\begin{aligned}E_n^{(1)} &= \big\langle n^{(0)}\big|H_1\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\,\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^2\big(A^\dagger + A\big)^2\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\Big((n+1)(n+2) + (2n+1)^2 + n(n-1)\Big) \\ &= \frac{3}{4}\lambda\hbar\omega\big(n^2 + (n+1)^2\big)\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.32}$$

so that

$$E_n = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{3}{4}\lambda\big(n^2 + (n+1)^2\big) + O\big(\lambda^2\big)\right). \tag{6.4.33}$$

Clearly, the first-order correction $E_n^{(1)}$ is *not* small compared with the zeroth-order energy $E_n^{(0)} = n\hbar\omega$ when the quantum number n is too large. Then, higher-order terms must be calculated or a totally different method used.

Finally, a remark about the normalization of $|n\rangle$ in accordance with (6.4.5), that is, $\langle n^{(0)}|n\rangle = 1$. When calculating expectation values in the nth state

$$\langle A\rangle_n = \frac{\langle n|A|n\rangle}{\langle n|n\rangle}\,, \tag{6.4.34}$$

we need the factor $Z_n = \langle n|n\rangle^{-1}$ for correct normalization. Beginning with

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{Z_n} &= \langle n|n\rangle \\
&= \Big(\langle n^{(0)}| + \langle n^{(1)}| + \langle n^{(2)}| + \cdots\Big)\Big(|n^{(0)}\rangle + |n^{(1)}\rangle + |n^{(2)}\rangle + \cdots\Big) \\
&= \underbrace{\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(0)}\rangle}_{=1\text{ (0th order)}} + \underbrace{\Big(\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(1)}\rangle + \langle n^{(1)}|n^{(0)}\rangle\Big)}_{=0\text{ (1st order)}} \\
&\quad + \underbrace{\Big(\langle n^{(0)}|n^{(2)}\rangle + \langle n^{(1)}|n^{(1)}\rangle + \langle n^{(2)}|n^{(0)}\rangle\Big)}_{=\langle n^{(1)}|n^{(1)}\rangle\text{ (2nd order)}} + \cdots \\
&= 1 + \langle n^{(1)}|n^{(1)}\rangle + O\big(H_1^3\big)\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.35}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}
Z_n &= 1 - \langle n^{(1)}|n^{(1)}\rangle + \cdots \\
&= 1 - \sum_{m(\neq n)} \frac{\Big|\langle m^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle\Big|^2}{\Big(E_m^{(0)} - E_n^{(0)}\Big)^2} + \cdots
\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.36}$$

to second order in the perturbation, where we note in particular that there is no first-order term.

6.5 Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory

Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory has a tendency to become quite tedious when one wants to go beyond second order in the perturbation. It is easy to use in the first and second orders but beyond that, alternative methods may be preferable. One such method is the one by Brillouin* and Wigner.†

*Léon Brillouin (1889–1969) †Eugene Paul (Jenő Pál) Wigner (1902–1995)

It proceeds from the eigenvalue equation (6.4.4), which we now write in the form

$$(E_n - H_0)\big|n\big\rangle = H_1\big|n\big\rangle\,. \tag{6.5.1}$$

Sticking to the convenient normalization of (6.4.5), $\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle = 1$, we also have

$$\begin{aligned}\big|n\big\rangle &= \sum_m \big|m^{(0)}\big\rangle\big\langle m^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle \\ &= \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \sum_{m(\neq n)} \big|m^{(0)}\big\rangle\big\langle m^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{6.5.2}$$

or

$$\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + Q_n\big|n\big\rangle \tag{6.5.3}$$

with

$$Q_n = 1 - \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle\big\langle n^{(0)}\big| = \sum_{m(\neq n)} \big|m^{(0)}\big\rangle\big\langle m^{(0)}\big|\,. \tag{6.5.4}$$

This operator Q_n projects on the subspace orthogonal to $\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle$. Since this is an eigenstate of H_0, Q_n commutes with H_0,

$$H_0 Q_n = Q_n H_0\,. \tag{6.5.5}$$

We use this property in

$$\begin{aligned}Q_n H_1\big|n\big\rangle &= Q_n(E_n - H_0)\big|n\big\rangle \\ &= (E_n - H_0)Q_n\big|n\big\rangle\end{aligned} \tag{6.5.6}$$

and so arrive at

$$Q_n\big|n\big\rangle = (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1\big|n\big\rangle\,. \tag{6.5.7}$$

Together then

$$\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1\big|n\big\rangle\,, \tag{6.5.8}$$

which is *not* an explicit equation for $|n\rangle$. Rather it determines $|n\rangle$ implicitly because $|n\rangle$ appears on both sides of the equation. But note that the second term on the right, $\propto H_1|n\rangle$, is smaller than $|n\rangle$ on the left by one power of H_1 so that we can generate a hierarchy of approximations by iteration:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\big|n\big\rangle &= \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big(\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \big|n\big\rangle \Big) \\
&= \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \Big((E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^2 \big|n\big\rangle \\
&= \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \Big((E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^2 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\
&\qquad + \Big((E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^3 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \cdots ,
\end{aligned}
\tag{6.5.9}
$$

which eventually leads us to the formal series

$$
\big|n\big\rangle = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \Big(\big(E_n - H_0\big)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^k \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \,. \tag{6.5.10}
$$

This is a geometric series with the sum

$$
\big|n\big\rangle = \Big(1 - \big(E_n - H_0\big)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^{-1} \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \,. \tag{6.5.11}
$$

This result and the equivalent expression in Exercise 98 are charmingly compact, but they are not as useful as they appear because they involve the unknown exact energy E_n on the right. In addition, it can be forbiddingly difficult to calculate the inverse of a complicated operator.

The energy E_n can be found in a systematic approximate way by truncating the series. We have

$$
E_n - E_n^{(0)} = \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| (E_n - H_0) \big|n\big\rangle = \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| H_1 \big|n\big\rangle \,, \tag{6.5.12}
$$

where we remember that $\big\langle n^{(0)}\big|n\big\rangle = 1$, and upon inserting the series (6.5.9) into

$$
E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| H_1 \big|n\big\rangle \,, \tag{6.5.13}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_n = E_n^{(0)} &+ \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| H_1 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\
&+ \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| H_1 (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle \\
&+ \big\langle n^{(0)}\big| H_1 \Big(\big(E_n - H_0\big)^{-1} Q_n H_1 \Big)^2 \big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle + \cdots .
\end{aligned}
\tag{6.5.14}
$$

Truncation after the first order gives

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \langle n^{(0)} | H_1 | n^{(0)} \rangle \,, \tag{6.5.15}$$

the familiar first-order result of both the Hellmann–Feynman theorem and the Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory. In the second order, we get

$$\begin{aligned} E_n = E_n^{(0)} &+ \langle n^{(0)} | H_1 | n^{(0)} \rangle \\ &+ \langle n^{(0)} | H_1 (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n H_1 | n^{(0)} \rangle \,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.5.16}$$

This will look more familiar after we make use of

$$\begin{aligned} (E_n - H_0)^{-1} Q_n &= (E_n - H_0)^{-1} \sum_{m(\neq n)} |m^{(0)}\rangle\langle m^{(0)}| \\ &= \sum_{m(\neq n)} \frac{|m^{(0)}\rangle\langle m^{(0)}|}{E_n - E_m^{(0)}} \,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.5.17}$$

when we get

$$E_n = E_n^{(0)} + \langle n^{(0)} | H_1 | n^{(0)} \rangle - \sum_{m(\neq n)} \frac{\left| \langle m^{(0)} | H_1 | n^{(0)} \rangle \right|^2}{E_m^{(0)} - E_n} \,. \tag{6.5.18}$$

This looks much like the second-order expression in the Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory, but there is a very crucial difference. We now have E_n in the denominator, not $E_n^{(0)}$ as we did in (6.4.21).

One could argue that, since we have truncated at the third order, the answer is only consistent to second order and that, therefore, we do not lose anything by the replacement $E_n \to E_n^{(0)}$ in the final expression. There is something to an argument of this kind, but nevertheless a better approximation is often obtained by leaving E_n in the second-order expression and regarding it as an implicit equation for E_n. In this manner, one gets, of course, the second order correctly but also consistent pieces of the higher-order terms, as they are implied at the second-order stage.

A simple example is, perhaps, more convincing evidence than a sophisticated general argument. Consider, therefore, the particularly simple situation in which H_1 has only two nonvanishing matrix elements in the $|n^{(0)}\rangle$ basis of the unperturbed eigenkets,

$$\langle 0^{(0)} | H_1 | 1^{(0)} \rangle = \epsilon = \epsilon^* = \langle 1^{(0)} | H_1 | 0^{(0)} \rangle \,, \tag{6.5.19}$$

and $\langle m^{(0)}|H_1|n^{(0)}\rangle = 0$ for all other choices of m and n. In the matrix representation in which H_0 is diagonal,

$$H_0 \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} E_0^{(0)} & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & E_1^{(0)} & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & E_2^{(0)} & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & E_3^{(0)} & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.5.20}$$

we then have

$$H_1 \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \epsilon & 0 & \cdots \\ \epsilon & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.5.21}$$

and it is easy to determine the eigenvalues of

$$H = H_0 + H_1 \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} E_0^{(0)} & \epsilon & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \epsilon & E_1^{(0)} & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & E_2^{(0)} & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & E_3^{(0)} & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.5.22}$$

namely $E_n = E_n^{(0)}$ for $n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$, and E_0, E_1 are the solutions of

$$\det\left(\begin{pmatrix} E_0^{(0)} - E & \epsilon \\ \epsilon & E_1^{(0)} - E \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0\,, \tag{6.5.23}$$

that is,

$$\left(E_0^{(0)} - E\right)\left(E_1^{(0)} - E\right) = \epsilon^2\,, \tag{6.5.24}$$

giving

$$\left.\begin{matrix} E_0 \\ E_1 \end{matrix}\right\} = \frac{1}{2}\left(E_0^{(0)} + E_1^{(0)}\right) \mp \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}\left(E_0^{(0)} - E_1^{(0)}\right)^2 + \epsilon^2}\,. \tag{6.5.25}$$

The Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory would result in the second-order approximation

$$\left.\begin{matrix} E_0 \\ E_1 \end{matrix}\right\} \cong \frac{1}{2}\left(E_0^{(0)} + E_1^{(0)}\right) \mp \frac{1}{2}\left(E_1^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}\right)\left(1 + \frac{2\epsilon^2}{\left(E_0^{(0)} - E_1^{(0)}\right)^2}\right) \tag{6.5.26}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 &\cong E_0^{(0)} - \frac{\epsilon^2}{E_1^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}}\,, \\ E_1 &\cong E_1^{(0)} + \frac{\epsilon^2}{E_1^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.5.27}$$

By contrast, the Brillouin–Wigner formalism gives, to second order,

$$E_0 = E_0^{(0)} - \frac{\epsilon^2}{E_1^{(0)} - E_0} \quad \text{or} \quad \left(E_0 - E_0^{(0)}\right)\left(E_0 - E_1^{(0)}\right) = \epsilon^2 \tag{6.5.28}$$

and

$$E_1 = E_1^{(0)} - \frac{\epsilon^2}{E_0^{(0)} - E_1} \quad \text{or} \quad \left(E_1 - E_1^{(0)}\right)\left(E_1 - E_0^{(0)}\right) = \epsilon^2\,, \tag{6.5.29}$$

which in both cases is the quadratic equation (6.5.24) that gave us the exact eigenenergies in (6.5.25). In this example, then, the second-order Brillouin–Wigner result is much better than the corresponding Rayleigh–Schrödinger approximation. This is particularly important when ϵ is not tiny on the scale set by $E_1^{(0)} - E_0^{(0)}$.

6.6 Perturbation theory for degenerate states

The Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation formalism and the Brillouin–Wigner perturbation formalism, as presented above, assume that the unperturbed energies, that is, the eigenvalues of H_0, are not degenerate,

$$E_0^{(0)} < E_1^{(0)} < E_2^{(0)} < \cdots\,. \tag{6.6.1}$$

We know, however, from the examples of the two-dimensional harmonic oscillator and the three-dimensional Coulomb problem that it is quite common to have degenerate excited states. For spherically symmetric situations, there is in fact always the energy degeneracy in the L_3 quantum number m because m does not appear in the radial Schrödinger equation

(4.4.23) that determines the eigenvalues of the Hamilton operator for given angular momentum quantum numbers l and m; recall also the lesson of Exercise 83.

The complications resulting from a degeneracy can be appreciated already at the level of the Hellmann–Feynman theorem. We return to (6.1.3) and (6.1.4) and make the additional quantum numbers explicit,

$$\begin{aligned} H_\lambda \big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle &= \big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle E_\lambda\,, \\ \frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle + H_\lambda\frac{\partial\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle}{\partial\lambda} &= \frac{\partial\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle}{\partial\lambda}E_\lambda + \big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle\frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.6.2}$$

where the symbol γ stands for the other quantum numbers (such as lm) that we indicated by "..." earlier. Now multiply the second equation by bra $\big\langle E_\lambda,\gamma'\big|$ with the same energy E_λ but perhaps different γ. This gives

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle E_\lambda,\gamma'\big|\frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle &= \frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big\langle E_\lambda,\gamma'\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle \\ &= \frac{\partial E_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\delta(\gamma,\gamma')\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.6.3}$$

where we have the general version of Kronecker's delta symbol,

$$\delta(\gamma,\gamma') = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad \gamma=\gamma'\,, \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad \gamma\neq\gamma'\,. \end{cases} \tag{6.6.4}$$

In (6.6.3), it states the orthogonality of the kets $|E,\gamma\rangle$ for different γs.

The appearance of $\delta(\gamma,\gamma')$ on the right implies that the left-hand side must also vanish for $\gamma\neq\gamma'$,

$$\big\langle E_\lambda,\gamma'\big|\frac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle = \begin{cases} \big\langle E_\lambda,\gamma\big|\dfrac{\partial H_\lambda}{\partial\lambda}\big|E_\lambda,\gamma\big\rangle & \text{for} \quad \gamma=\gamma'\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad \gamma\neq\gamma'\,, \end{cases} \tag{6.6.5}$$

which is really a statement about the fitting choice for the unperturbed, degenerate eigenstates of H_0 in $H=H_0+H_1$. For the purpose of perturbation theory, we need to have

$$\big\langle n^{(0)},\gamma\big|H_1\big|n^{(0)},\gamma'\big\rangle = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \gamma\neq\gamma'\,. \tag{6.6.6}$$

In other words, the unperturbed states are to be chosen such that the perturbation H_1 has a diagonal matrix for them.

All of this is more easily understood after considering an example. We take one of particular physical interest, namely the change in the energy of hydrogen that results from an external electric field.

6.7 Linear Stark effect

We can safely assume that the electric field $\boldsymbol{E}$ does not vary significantly over the volume of the atom. In effect, we thus deal with a homogeneous electric field $\boldsymbol{E}$ that acts in addition to the Coulomb field of the nuclear charge Ze. The additional force on the electron (charge $-e<0$) is

$$\boldsymbol{F} = -e\boldsymbol{E}\,, \tag{6.7.1}$$

and the Hamilton operator of (5.1.1) acquires an extra term,

$$H = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}|}}_{=H_0} \underbrace{-\,\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}}_{=H_1}\,, \tag{6.7.2}$$

where we continue to neglect the small correction associated with the large but finite mass of the nucleus.

We recall that the eigenvalues of H_0 are the Bohr energies of (5.1.17)

$$E_n^{(0)} = -\frac{Z^2e^2/a_0}{2n^2}\,, \quad n=1,2,3,\ldots \tag{6.7.3}$$

which are n^2-fold degenerate inasmuch as there are n^2 states

$$\big|n,l,m\big\rangle = \big|E_n^{(0)},\,\gamma\,\big\rangle \atop \downarrow \atop lm \tag{6.7.4}$$

for the given n, with $l=0,1,2,\ldots$ and $m=0,\pm1,\pm2,\ldots,\pm l$. Only the $n=1$ ground state $|1,0,0\rangle$ is not degenerate, and the electric field has no first-order effect on it,

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle 1,0,0\big|H_1\big|1,0,0\big\rangle &= \int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,(-\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})\Big|\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}\big|1,0,0\big\rangle\Big|^2 \\ &= \int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,(-\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})\Big|R_{10}(r)\mathrm{Y}_{00}(\theta,\phi)\Big|^2 \\ &= \int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,(-\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})\frac{1}{\pi}\left(\frac{Z}{a_0}\right)^3\mathrm{e}^{-2Zr/a_0} = 0\,.\end{aligned} \tag{6.7.5}$$

Here, we use $\langle\boldsymbol{r}|1,0,0\rangle = R_{10}(r)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)$ with

$$R_{10}(r) = 2\left(\frac{Z}{a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\mathrm{L}_0^{(1)}\left(\frac{2Zr}{a_0}\right)\mathrm{e}^{-Zr/a_0} = 2\left(\frac{Z}{a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\mathrm{e}^{-Zr/a_0} \tag{6.7.6}$$

from (5.2.28) and $\mathrm{Y}_{00}(\theta,\phi) = (4\pi)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ from (5.2.39).

For the set of first excited states, those with $n = 2$, we have $(l, m) = (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (1, -1)$, the $2^2 = 4$ orthogonal states with definite L_3 and $\boldsymbol{L}^2$ values, so that there are altogether $4^2 = 16$ matrix elements of the form

$$\big\langle 2, l, m\big|H_1\big|2, l', m'\big\rangle = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, \big\langle 2, l, m\big|\boldsymbol{r}\big\rangle(-\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{r})\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|2, l', m'\big\rangle \tag{6.7.7}$$

that we need to evaluate. For this purpose, we will, of course, choose the coordinate system conveniently, namely such that the third cartesian axis that is singled out by the spherical coordinates coincides with the direction of the electric field, of the force. Then,

$$\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{r} = Fr\cos(\theta) \tag{6.7.8}$$

and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\big\langle 2, l, m\big|H_1\big|2, l', m'\big\rangle \\
&= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2 \int_0^{2\pi} \mathrm{d}\phi \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\, \sin(\theta) \\
&\quad \times \big(R_{2l}(r)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)\big)^* \big(-Fr\cos(\theta)\big) R_{2l'}(r)\mathrm{Y}_{l'm'}(\theta,\phi) \\
&= -F\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^3\, R_{2l}(r)^* R_{2l'}(r) \\
&\quad \times \underbrace{\int_0^{2\pi} \mathrm{d}\phi \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\, \sin(\theta)\cos(\theta)\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\theta,\phi)^*\mathrm{Y}_{l'm'}(\theta,\phi)}_{\text{angular part}}\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{6.7.9}$$

We take a close look at the angular part first.

Recall that the ϕ dependence of Y_{lm} is given by a factor $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}$ so that

$$\text{angular part} \propto \int_0^{2\pi} \mathrm{d}\phi\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(m-m')\phi} = 2\pi\delta_{mm'}\,, \tag{6.7.10}$$

that is, all terms with $m \neq m'$ vanish, a benefit of the well-chosen coordinate system. So we only need to consider the angular momentum quantum numbers of the combinations marked by the symbol $*$ in the following table:

		lm'			
l	m	00	10	11	1−1
0	0	$*$	$*$	0	0
1	0	$*$	$*$	0	0
1	1	0	0	$*$	0
1	−1	0	0	0	$*$

(6.7.11)

We note that, see (5.2.39),

$$\mathrm{Y}_{00} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4\pi}}\,, \quad \mathrm{Y}_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}\cos(\theta)\,, \quad \mathrm{Y}_{1\pm1} = \mp\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}\phi}\sin(\theta) \tag{6.7.12}$$

so that the angular part is

$$\begin{aligned} l = l' = 1\,,\ m = m' = \pm1: \quad & \frac{3}{4}\int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\ \sin(\theta)\cos(\theta)\sin(\theta)^2 \\ & = \frac{3}{16}\sin(\theta)^4\Big|_{\theta=0}^{\pi} = 0\,, \\ l = l' = 1\,,\ m = m' = 0: \quad & \frac{3}{2}\int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\ \sin(\theta)\cos(\theta)\cos(\theta)^2 \\ & = -\frac{3}{8}\cos(\theta)^4\Big|_{\theta=0}^{\pi} = 0\,, \\ l = l' = 0\,,\ m = m' = 0\ : \quad & \frac{1}{2}\int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\ \sin(\theta)\cos(\theta) \\ & = \frac{1}{4}\sin(\theta)^2\Big|_{\theta=0}^{\pi} = 0\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.13}$$

and finally,

$$\begin{aligned} l = 0\,,\ l' = 1, m = m' = 0\ : \quad & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\ \sin(\theta)\cos(\theta)\cos(\theta) \\ & = -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}}\cos(\theta)^3\Big|_{\theta=0}^{\pi} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.14}$$

So, of the 16 matrix elements, all but two are 0 as a result of their vanishing angular parts, and we need to evaluate the radial integral only for $l = 0$, $m = 0$; $l' = 1$, $m' = 0$ and $l = 1$, $m = 0$; $l' = 0$, $m' = 0$, which in fact is the same integration, see (6.7.9),

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle 2,1,0\big|H_1\big|2,0,0\big\rangle &= \big\langle 2,0,0\big|H_1\big|2,1,0\big\rangle^* \\ &= -F\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^3\, R_{21}(r)^* R_{20}(r)\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.15}$$

With

$$\begin{aligned} R_{21}(r) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\left(\frac{Z}{2a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} s\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}s}\,, \\ R_{20}(r) &= \left(\frac{Z}{2a_0}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} (s-2)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}s}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.16}$$

where $s = Zr/a_0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle 2,1,0\big|H_1\big|2,0,0\big\rangle &= -\frac{1}{3}F\frac{a_0}{Z}\frac{1}{8}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}s\, s^4(s-2)\,\mathrm{e}^{-s} \\ &= -\frac{1}{24}\frac{Fa_0}{Z}\underbrace{\big(5!-2\times 4!\big)}_{=3\times 24} = -\frac{3Fa_0}{Z}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.17}$$

The complete table (6.7.11) is therefore

$n=2$:

	lm'			
$l\ m$	00	10	11	1−1
0 0	0	$-3Fa_0/Z$	0	0
1 0	$-3Fa_0/Z$	0	0	0
1 1	0	0	0	0
1−1	0	0	0	0

(6.7.18)

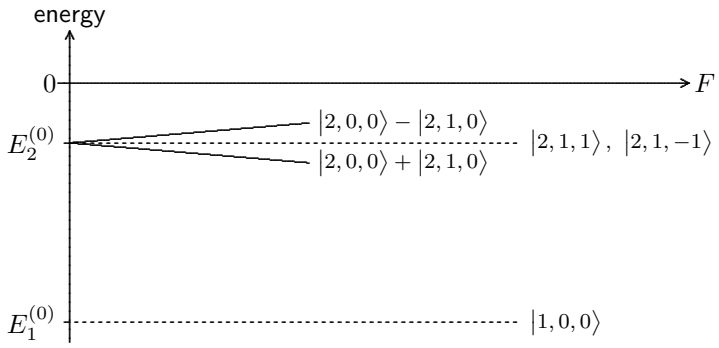
This tells us that, in the $n=2$ sector,

$$\begin{aligned} H_1\big|2,0,0\big\rangle &= \big|2,1,0\big\rangle(-3Fa_0/Z)\,, \\ H_1\big|2,1,0\big\rangle &= \big|2,0,0\big\rangle(-3Fa_0/Z)\,, \\ H_1\big|2,1,\pm1\big\rangle &= 0\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.7.19}$$

As a consequence, $\big|2,1,1\big\rangle$ and $\big|2,1,-1\big\rangle$ are eigenstates of $H_1 = -\boldsymbol{F}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}$ with eigenvalue 0, whereas the superposition states $|2,0,0\rangle \pm |2,1,0\rangle$ are eigenkets of H_1 with eigenvalues $\mp 3Fa_0/Z$,

$$H_1\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|2,0,0\big\rangle\pm\big|2,1,0\big\rangle\Big) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|2,0,0\big\rangle\pm\big|2,1,0\big\rangle\Big)\big(\mp 3Fa_0/Z\big)\,, \tag{6.7.20}$$

where the factor $2^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ normalizes the superposition kets. We summarize this so-called *linear Stark* effect* graphically in a sketch:



(6.7.21)

*Johannes STARK (1874–1957)

The energies of $|1,0,0\rangle$, $|2,1,1\rangle$, and $|2,1,-1\rangle$ do not change when the electric field is applied, but those of $|2,0,0\rangle \pm |2,1,0\rangle$ decrease/increase by $\mp 3Fa_0/Z$, respectively.

The energy change $3Fa_0/Z$ should be compared with the electrostatic energy of the Coulomb field at the typical distance of $r \sim a_0/Z$,

$$\frac{Fa_0/Z}{Ze^2\Big/\frac{a_0}{Z}} = \frac{Fa_0^2}{Z^3e^2} = \frac{\big|\boldsymbol{E}\big|}{Z^3e/a_0^2}\,, \tag{6.7.22}$$

where $\big|\boldsymbol{E}\big|$ is the strength of the electric field that is applied. This field is "weak" in the sense that first-order perturbation theory applies if

$$\big|\boldsymbol{E}\big| \ll \frac{Z^3e}{a_0^2} = \frac{Ze}{(a_0/Z)^2}\,. \tag{6.7.23}$$

We recall $e^2/a_0 = 27.2\,\text{eV}$ or $e/a_0 = 27.2\,\text{V}$ and $a_0 = 0.529\,\text{Å}$, and so note that, in view of

$$\frac{e}{a_0^2} = \frac{27.2}{0.529}\frac{\text{V}}{\text{Å}} = 5.14\times 10^{11}\,\frac{\text{V}}{\text{m}}\,, \tag{6.7.24}$$

all laboratory electric fields are quite weak.

Note that we get this linear dependence on F only because $|2,0,0\rangle$ and $|2,1,0\rangle$ have the same unperturbed energy. A degeneracy of this kind, the same energy for different l values, is particular to the Coulomb potential (it also occurs in the three-dimensional harmonic oscillator, which is not so relevant, however), and we do not have a linear Stark effect in more complex atoms, helium being the simplest example, where the l-degeneracy does not exist.

In the hydrogen ground state, we have a quadratic Stark effect,

$$E_0^{(2)} = -\frac{1}{2}\alpha\boldsymbol{E}^2 \tag{6.7.25}$$

with $\alpha > 0$, because the ground-state energy is *always* lowered in second order of the perturbation, as we found in (6.4.22). The energy change δE that results from a small change of the electric field, $\delta\boldsymbol{E}$, is quite generally of the form

$$\delta E = -\boldsymbol{d}\cdot\delta\boldsymbol{E}\,, \tag{6.7.26}$$

where $\boldsymbol{d}$ is the *electric dipole moment*. For the second-order Stark effect,

this is

$$\boldsymbol{d} = \alpha \boldsymbol{E}\,, \tag{6.7.27}$$

that is, the dipole moment itself is proportional to the applied field. The proportionality constant α is the so-called *polarizability* of the atom. There is, then, a rather simple physical picture: When applying the electric field, we induce an electric dipole moment in the atom (by redistributing the charges), and then the electric field has a "handle" on the atom, and we get an energy change as a secondary effect.

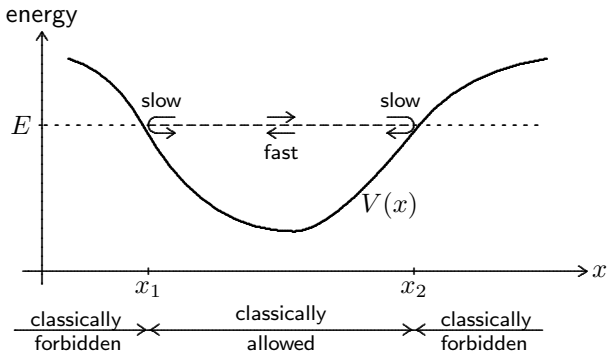
By contrast, the excited states $|2,0,0\rangle \pm |2,1,0\rangle$ of (6.7.20) have an electric dipole moment to begin with. The electric field can then act immediately and give us an energy change in first order.

6.8 WKB approximation

Consider a particle moving along the x axis, with the motion governed by a Hamilton operator of the typical form

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + V(X)\,, \tag{6.8.1}$$

where $V(X)$ is some reasonable potential energy function:



(6.8.2)

If the situation is as sketched, *classical* motion with energy E is restricted to the range $x_1 \le x \le x_2$, that is to x values between the classical turning points x_1 and x_2, where the potential energy is equal to the total energy,

$$V(x_1) = E = V(x_2)\,, \tag{6.8.3}$$

so that the kinetic energy $p^2/(2M) = E - V(x)$ vanishes. Between the turning points, we have

$$E - V(x) > 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x_1 < x < x_2 \tag{6.8.4}$$

so that a positive kinetic energy results, but to the left of x_1 and to the right of x_2, we would have negative kinetic energy which makes these regions inaccessible to classical motion.

Near the turning points, the kinetic energy is small so that the velocity is small and the particle spends a relatively longer time near the turning points. A random snapshot would therefore have a good chance of showing the particle near one of the turning points, and a smaller chance of showing it in between, where the motion is faster. When we translate these considerations into the language of quantum mechanics, we expect that the probability density $|\psi(x)|^2$ is large near the classical turning points, smaller between them, and very small (exponentially decreasing) when one moves into the classically forbidden regions.

We solve the classical statement about energy conservation,

$$E = \frac{p^2}{2M} + V(x)\,, \tag{6.8.5}$$

for the classical momentum as a function of position,

$$p = \pm\sqrt{2M\big(E - V(x)\big)} = \pm p(x) \tag{6.8.6}$$

with "+" for motion to the right and "−" for motion to the left. This *classical position-dependent momentum* $p(x)$ is real in the classically allowed region, where $E > V(x)$, and imaginary in the classically forbidden region, where $E < V(x)$.

The corresponding quantum mechanical problem asks for the solution of the Schrödinger eigenvalue equation,

$$H\big|E\big\rangle = \big|E\big\rangle E\,, \tag{6.8.7}$$

in terms of the position wave function $\psi_E(x) = \big\langle x\big|E\big\rangle$,

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2} + V(x)\right)\psi_E(x) = E\psi_E(x)\,. \tag{6.8.8}$$

Let us write this as

$$-\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\psi_E(x) = -\psi_E''(x) = \frac{1}{\hbar^2}2M\big(E - V(x)\big)\psi_E(x)\,, \tag{6.8.9}$$

where we recognize the classical momentum at position x, $p(x)$ of (6.8.6),

$$-\psi_E''(x) = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} p(x)^2 \psi_E(x)\,. \tag{6.8.10}$$

Now note that

in the classically allowed region: $p(x)^2 > 0$ and $\psi_E(x)$ is oscillatory,

in the classically forbidden region: $p(x)^2 < 0$ and $\psi_E(x)$ is monotonically increasing or decreasing.

With this in mind, we make the *ansatz*

$$\psi_E(x) = a(x)\cos\bigl(\phi(x)\bigr) \tag{6.8.11}$$

for the wave function in the classically allowed region, expecting that we can choose the amplitude function $a(x)$ and the phase function $\phi(x)$ real and slowly varying. The oscillatory nature of $\psi_E(x)$ should be taken care of by the oscillating cosine function. With

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi_E' &= a'\cos(\phi) - a\phi'\sin(\phi)\,,\\
\psi_E'' &= \bigl(a'' - a\phi'^2\bigr)\cos(\phi) - \bigl(2a'\phi' + a\phi''\bigr)\sin(\phi)\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.12}$$

we match the $\cos(\phi)$ and $\sin(\phi)$ terms in

$$\begin{aligned}
-\psi_E'' &= \bigl(2a'\phi' + a\phi''\bigr)\sin(\phi) - \bigl(a'' - a\phi'^2\bigr)\cos(\phi)\\
&= \frac{1}{\hbar^2} p(x)^2 \psi_E = \frac{1}{\hbar^2} p(x)^2 a\cos(\phi)
\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.13}$$

and get

$$a'' - a\phi'^2 = -\frac{1}{\hbar^2} p^2 a \tag{6.8.14}$$

as well as

$$2a'\phi' + a\phi'' = 0\,. \tag{6.8.15}$$

The latter has $a(x)$ as an integrating factor,

$$2aa'\phi' + a^2\phi'' = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\bigl(a^2\phi'\bigr) = 0\,, \tag{6.8.16}$$

so that

$$a^2\phi' = \text{constant} \tag{6.8.17}$$

follows, and (6.8.14) says

$$\phi'^2 = \left(\frac{p(x)}{\hbar}\right)^2 + \frac{a''}{a}\,. \tag{6.8.18}$$

Now, since we are relying on ideas borrowed from classical mechanics, we should concern ourselves with (highly) excited states, that is, relatively large energy eigenvalue E. We then expect that $\psi = a\cos(\phi)$ undergoes many oscillations of the cosine before the amplitude $a(x)$ changes considerably. If so, the term a''/a should not be overly important, and so we arrive at the

$$\text{zeroth approximation: ignore } \frac{a''}{a} \text{ in (6.8.18).} \tag{6.8.19}$$

This is known as the WKB approximation, where the initials stand for Wentzel,* Kramers,† and Brillouin who, in independent pieces of research, came up with essentially the same idea at the same time. Some, mostly the British, speak of the JWKB approximation, remembering thus the somewhat earlier contribution by Jeffreys.‡ In fact, the history of this subject begins much earlier with contributions from Green§ and Carlini.¶ Perhaps, then, we should advocate it as the CGJWKB approximation.

We follow their guidance and see what we get upon neglecting the a''/a term. Then,

$$\phi'(x) = \pm\frac{1}{\hbar}p(x) \quad \text{with} \quad p(x) = \sqrt{2M\big(E - V(x)\big)} > 0\,, \tag{6.8.20}$$

where we can just take the + solution because eventually the sign of ϕ will not matter in $\psi_E = a\cos(\phi)$. So,

$$\phi(x) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\int^x \mathrm{d}x'\, p(x')\,, \tag{6.8.21}$$

where a particular choice of the lower integration limit fixes the value of the integration constant, which is of no concern to us presently.

From (6.8.17), we then get

$$a(x) \propto p(x)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \tag{6.8.22}$$

with a proportionality factor that is to be determined by the normalization of $\psi_E(x)$. This detail is also not so interesting for us right now.

---

*Gregor WENTZEL (1898–1978) †Hendrik Anthony KRAMERS (1894–1952)
‡Harold JEFFREYS (1891–1989) §George GREEN (1793–1841)
¶Francesco CARLINI (1783–1862)

We expect the WKB approximation to give good results whenever a''/a is small compared with $\big(p(x)/\hbar\big)^2$, which means, roughly, that

$$\left|\frac{\hbar}{p(x)}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}V(x)\right| \ll E - V(x)\,. \tag{6.8.23}$$

We meet there the so-called (reduced) de Broglie* wavelength

$$\lambda\!\!\!^{-}(x) = \frac{\hbar}{p(x)} = \phi'(x)^{-1}\,. \tag{6.8.24}$$

Its physical significance is revealed by recalling that

$$\cos\Big(2\pi\frac{x}{\lambda}\Big) = \cos\Big(\frac{x}{\lambda}\Big) \quad (\lambda \text{ constant}) \tag{6.8.25}$$

is an oscillation with wavelength λ. Now, in

$$\cos\big(\phi(x+\mathrm{d}x)\big) = \cos\big(\phi(x) + \phi'(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\big)\,, \tag{6.8.26}$$

we see that an increment by $\mathrm{d}x$ changes the phase by

$$\phi'(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{\hbar/p(x)} = \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{\lambda\!\!\!^{-}(x)}\,, \tag{6.8.27}$$

and this tells us that $\lambda\!\!\!^{-}(x)$ plays the role of a local wavelength. Of course, this is a concept that is only meaningful if there are many oscillations before $\lambda\!\!\!^{-}(x)$ changes significantly. In

$$\left|\lambda\!\!\!^{-}(x)\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}V(x)\right| \ll E - V(x)\,, \tag{6.8.28}$$

it states that the WKB approximation is reliable if $V(x)$ does not change much over the distance of a few de Broglie wavelengths.

Clearly, this is not true in the immediate vicinity of the classical turning points, where $E - V(x) \cong 0$. But it is expected to be alright inside the classically allowed region, at least as long as the energy E is reasonably above the ground-state energy associated with the potential $V(x)$.

Let us now return to (6.8.21). The total phase accumulated between the turning points is

$$\phi(x_2) - \phi(x_1) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\int_{x_1}^{x_2}\mathrm{d}x\,p(x)\,. \tag{6.8.29}$$

It is reasonably plausible (and can be justified by more sophisticated arguments) that this difference takes on only particular values, reflecting thereby

*Louis-Victor de Broglie (1892–1987)

the particular energy eigenvalues of the Hamilton operator. Let us see what we get for the case of a harmonic oscillator, for which we know the energy eigenvalues and for which we can also evaluate the integral over $p(x)$.

Thus, we take

$$V(x) = \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 x^2\,, \quad E = \hbar\omega\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right) \tag{6.8.30}$$

and have

$$\phi(x_2) - \phi(x_1) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\int_{x_1}^{x_2} \mathrm{d}x\, \sqrt{2ME - (M\omega x)^2} \tag{6.8.31}$$

with

$$\left.\begin{matrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{matrix}\right\} = \mp\frac{\sqrt{2ME}}{M\omega}\,. \tag{6.8.32}$$

Substitute

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{\sqrt{2ME}}{M\omega}\sin(\vartheta)\,, \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} \le \vartheta \le \frac{\pi}{2}\,, \\ \mathrm{d}x &= \frac{\sqrt{2ME}}{M\omega}\mathrm{d}\vartheta\, \cos(\vartheta)\,, \\ \sqrt{2ME - (M\omega x)^2} &= \sqrt{2ME}\cos(\vartheta) \end{aligned} \tag{6.8.33}$$

and get

$$\phi(x_2) - \phi(x_1) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\frac{2E}{\omega}\underbrace{\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\mathrm{d}\vartheta\, \cos(\vartheta)^2}_{=\pi/2} = \pi\frac{E}{\hbar\omega} = \pi\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right). \tag{6.8.34}$$

Taking this lesson about the harmonic oscillator as guidance, we require more generally $\phi(x_2) - \phi(x_1) = (n + \frac{1}{2})\pi$ when E is the nth energy eigenstate, that is,

$$\frac{1}{\pi\hbar}\int_{x_1}^{x_2} \mathrm{d}x\, \sqrt{2ME_n - 2MV(x)} = n + \frac{1}{2}\,, \tag{6.8.35}$$

which is, indeed, the correct *WKB quantization rule*. It determines the WKB estimates for the energy eigenvalues by putting $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ on the right-hand side. By construction, it gives the correct eigenvalues for the harmonic oscillator.

A further plausibility argument requests that the turning points are on equal footing, which translates into the requirement

$$\cos\bigl(\phi(x_1)\bigr) = \pm\cos\bigl(\phi(x_2)\bigr)\,. \tag{6.8.36}$$

In conjunction with the quantization rule (6.8.35), this gives

$$\begin{aligned}\cos\bigl(\phi(x_2)\bigr) &= \cos\bigl(\phi(x_1) + (n+\tfrac{1}{2})\pi\bigr)\\ &= (-1)^n\cos\bigl(\phi(x_1) + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\bigr)\\ &= \pm\cos\bigl(\phi(x_1)\bigr)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.37}$$

which is met if $\phi(x_1) = -\dfrac{\pi}{4}$. Together then

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(x) &= \frac{1}{\hbar}\int_{x_1}^{x}\mathrm{d}x'\,p(x') - \frac{\pi}{4}\\ \text{with}\quad p(x) &= \sqrt{2M\bigl(E - V(x)\bigr)}\,.\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.38}$$

As an illustration of the WKB quantization rule (6.8.35), we try it out for $V(x) = F|x|$ with $F > 0$, the potential of the constant restoring force of (6.3.5). The turning points are at

$$\left.\begin{matrix}x_1\\ x_2\end{matrix}\right\} = \mp E_n/F \tag{6.8.39}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}n + \frac{1}{2} &= \frac{2}{\pi\hbar}\int_0^{E_n/F}\mathrm{d}x\,\sqrt{2M(E_n - Fx)}\\ &= \frac{2}{\pi\hbar}\frac{-1}{3MF}\bigl(2M(E_n - Fx)^{\frac{3}{2}}\Big|_{x\,=\,0}^{E_n/F}\\ &= \frac{2}{\pi\hbar}\frac{(2ME_n)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{3MF}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.40}$$

with the consequence

$$E_n = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\Bigl(n + \frac{1}{2}\Bigr)\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}\left(\frac{\hbar^2F^2}{M}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}\,. \tag{6.8.41}$$

We compare the exact values for $E_n\big/\bigl(\hbar^2F^2/M\bigr)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ with the WKB approximate values in the following table:

n	exact	WKB	error (%)
0	0.8086	0.8853	+9.5
1	1.8558	1.8416	−0.77
2	2.5781	2.5888	+0.41
3	3.2446	3.2397	−0.15
4	3.8257	3.8306	+0.13
5	4.3817	4.3790	−0.006

(6.8.42)

The WKB approximation is stunningly good, unreasonably good one might say, except for the ground state. But for estimating the ground-state energy, we have different methods at our disposal, such as the variational estimates of the Rayleigh–Ritz method.

There is also a WKB quantization rule for spherically symmetric three-dimensional potential energy functions $V\big(|\boldsymbol{r}|\big) = V(r)$. We return to the differential equation (4.4.23),

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}r^2} + \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2} + V(r)\right) r\psi_{n_r l} = E_{n_r l}\, r\psi_{n_r l}\,, \tag{6.8.43}$$

and try to read it as a one-dimensional Schrödinger eigenvalue equation with the effective potential energy

$$V(r) + \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}\,. \tag{6.8.44}$$

This does not really work well, however, and there is a reason for this failure: the range of r is $r > 0$, whereas that of x in the one-dimensional WKB argument is $-\infty < x < \infty$. Thus, before invoking the WKB argument, we should convert the radial equation for r into one for an auxiliary x variable that ranges over all real values. As noted by Langer,* the correct procedure is to write $r = \mathrm{e}^x$, then derive the differential equation in x, make it look like a one-dimensional Schrödinger eigenvalue equation, apply WKB to it, and finally return to r as the integration variable. When all of this is done, the outcome is the following *WKB quantization rule for spherically symmetric three-dimensional potentials*,

$$n_r + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{\pi\hbar}\int \mathrm{d}r\, \sqrt{2M\big(E_{n_r l} - V_l(r)\big)}\,, \tag{6.8.45}$$

*Rudolph Ernest LANGER (1894–1968)

with

$$V_l(r) = \frac{\hbar^2\left(l+\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{2Mr^2} + V(r)\,. \tag{6.8.46}$$

In (6.8.45), we integrate over the range of r values for which the argument of the square root is nonnegative, that is, where $V_l(r) < E_{n,l}$. The net effect of Langer's reasoning is the replacement

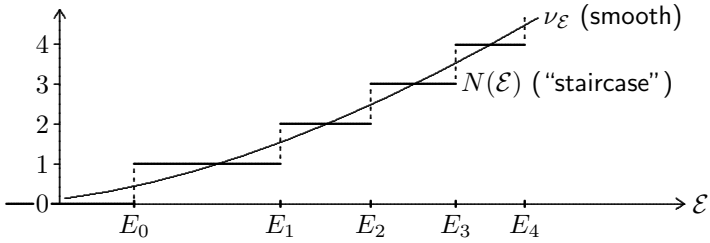
$$l(l+1) \to \left(l+\frac{1}{2}\right)^2, \tag{6.8.47}$$

which does not amount to much if l is large but improves matters dramatically for small l values.

As a final remark about WKB, now returning to the basic one-dimensional situation, we consider a very different approach, which is, however, in the same semiclassical spirit. For that, we take for granted that the eigenvalues of $H = P^2/(2M) + V(X)$ are nondegenerate and ordered naturally,

$$-\infty < E_0 < E_1 < E_2 < \cdots\,. \tag{6.8.48}$$

We introduce a function that counts the number of eigenvalues below a parameter energy $\mathcal{E}$,



$$N(\mathcal{E}) = \{\text{number of } E_n \text{ such that } E_n < \mathcal{E}\} = \sum_n \eta(\mathcal{E}-E_n)\,, \tag{6.8.49}$$

where

$$\eta(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for} \quad x > 0\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad x < 0 \end{cases} \tag{6.8.50}$$

is Heaviside's* unit step function, an antiderivative of Dirac's delta function $\delta(x)$. Exploiting the orthonormality and completeness of the eigenkets $|E_n\rangle$

*Oliver Heaviside (1850–1925)

of H,

$$\langle E_n|E_m\rangle = \delta_{nm}\,, \quad H = \sum_n |E_n\rangle E_n \langle E_n|\,, \tag{6.8.51}$$

we note that

$$N(\mathcal{E}) = \mathrm{tr}\big(\eta(\mathcal{E}-H)\big)\,. \tag{6.8.52}$$

This trace can be evaluated by a phase-space integration

$$N(\mathcal{E}) = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\frac{\langle x|\eta(\mathcal{E}-H)|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle}\,. \tag{6.8.53}$$

We know from Exercise 16 that

$$\frac{\langle x|H|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} = \frac{p^2}{2M} + V(x) \tag{6.8.54}$$

and establish easily that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\langle x|H^2|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} &= \left(\frac{p^2}{2M}+V(x)\right)^2 + \frac{\langle x|\,[P^2,V(X)]\,|p\rangle}{2M\langle x|p\rangle}\\ &= \left(\frac{p^2}{2M}+V(x)\right)^2 + O(\hbar)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.55}$$

The inference is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\langle x|f(H)|p\rangle}{\langle x|p\rangle} &= f\Big(\frac{p^2}{2M}+V(x)\Big) + \{\text{terms}\propto\hbar\} + \{\text{terms}\propto\hbar^2\} + \cdots\\ &= f\Big(\frac{p^2}{2M}+V(x)\Big) + \text{“quantum corrections.”}\end{aligned} \tag{6.8.56}$$

Accordingly, we have

$$N(\mathcal{E}) = \nu_{\mathcal{E}} + \text{“quantum corrections”} \tag{6.8.57}$$

with

$$\nu_{\mathcal{E}} = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\eta\Big(\mathcal{E}-\frac{p^2}{2M}-V(x)\Big)\,. \tag{6.8.58}$$

This $\nu_{\mathcal{E}}$ is a *smooth* function of $\mathcal{E}$, it does not have the discontinuous jumps that are characteristic for $N(\mathcal{E})$, and we can safely assume that it interpolates the staircase of $N(\mathcal{E})$ in (6.8.49). This suggests that we should expect

$\nu_{\mathcal{E}} = n + \frac{1}{2}$ for $\mathcal{E} = E_n$. We take this suggestion seriously and so arrive at

$$n + \frac{1}{2} = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\,\eta\Big(E_n - \frac{p^2}{2M} - V(x)\Big) \tag{6.8.59}$$

as an implicit approximation for E_n. The step function $\eta(\,)$ limits the values of x and p to the classically allowed values that obey $p^2/(2M)+V(x) \le E_n$. In particular, the p integration covers the range

$$-\sqrt{2M\big(E_n - V(x)\big)} < p < \sqrt{2M\big(E_n - V(x)\big)}\,. \tag{6.8.60}$$

Therefore,

$$n + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{\pi\hbar}\int \mathrm{d}x\,\sqrt{2M\big(E_n - V(x)\big)}\,, \tag{6.8.61}$$

where the x integration covers all values for which $V(x) < E_n$. In the situation that is depicted in (6.8.2), this is the range $x_1 < x < x_2$ between the classical turning points, and then (6.8.61) is exactly the WKB quantization rule of (6.8.35).

This second derivation of (6.8.35) is much more direct and, in particular, does not involve approximations to the wave functions. Further, by working out, in a systematic manner, the "quantum corrections" of (6.8.56), one can improve on the WKB quantization rule quite systematically. These observations speak in favor of the second derivation.

This page intentionally left blank

Exercises with Hints

Chapter 1

1 One term in the sum of (1.2.17) is $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j = e_j^{\downarrow}\vec{e}_j$. Show that $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j{}^2 = \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j$ and $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j{}^{\mathrm{T}} = \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j$. What is, therefore, the geometrical significance of $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j$? Repeat for

$$\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_{jk} = \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_j + \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}_k \quad \text{with} \quad j \neq k\,.$$

2 Why is the property $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}{}^{\mathrm{T}} = \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}$ important in Exercise 1? Given an example for which $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}{}^2 = \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}$ while $\overleftarrow{\vec{P}}{}^{\mathrm{T}} \neq \overleftarrow{\vec{P}}$.

3 Use the definitions of $(ef)_{jk}$ and $(fe)_{kj'}$ to verify (1.2.26) directly.

4 In analogy to (1.2.25), what appears in $y_k = \sum_{k'} \boxed{?}_{kk'} y_{k'}$ as the result of converting y_k into x_j and then back to y_k? Verify here too that $\boxed{?}_{kk'} = \delta_{kk'}$.

5 How are the transformation matrices $(ef)_{jk}$ and $(fe)_{kj}$ in (1.2.23) and (1.2.24) related to the orthogonal dyadic $\overleftarrow{\vec{O}}$ in (1.2.30)?

6 Show that the Cauchy–Bunyakovsky–Schwarz inequality

$$\big|\langle a|b\rangle\big|^2 = \langle a|b\rangle\langle b|a\rangle \leq \langle a|a\rangle\langle b|b\rangle$$

is obeyed by all bras $\langle a|$ and all kets $|b\rangle$, and state under which condition the equal sign applies. Conclude that $\big|\langle 1|2\rangle\big|^2 = \mathrm{prob}(1 \leftarrow 2) \leq 1$ because the physical bra $\langle 1|$ is normalized in accordance with (1.3.14) and so is the physical ket $|2\rangle$.

7 Verify that the unitary operator U in (1.4.18) brings about the transformation in (1.4.16). Then evaluate $\langle p|U$. Do you get what you expect?

8 Show that the eigenvalue equation

$$f(X)\big|x\big\rangle = \big|x\big\rangle f(x)$$

holds for $f(X)$ in (1.5.10). What is $\langle x|f(X)$?

9 Consider

$$f(X)^\dagger = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \big|x\big\rangle f(x)^* \big\langle x\big|$$

and compare $f(X)f(X)^\dagger$ with $f(X)^\dagger f(X)$. Which property must be possessed by $f(x)$ if $f(X)$ is its own adjoint, $f(X)^\dagger = f(X)$? Operators with this property are called *selfadjoint* or simply *hermitian*, whereby we ignore the subtle difference between the two terms in the mathematical literature. Conclude that all expectation values of a hermitian operator are real. This reality property can serve as an alternative definition of what is a hermitian operator.

10 For the position operator X and the momentum operator P introduced in Section 1.5, show that

$$\big\langle x\big|P = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big\langle x\big|\,, \qquad X\big|p\big\rangle = \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial p}\big|p\big\rangle$$

and then infer the integral versions

$$\big\langle x\big|\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar} = \big\langle x + x'\big|\,, \qquad \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}\big|p\big\rangle = \big|p + p'\big\rangle\,.$$

The latter involve the basic unitary operators associated with P and X, which are the topic of Section 1.8.

11 Next infer that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar} X\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar} = X - x\,, \quad \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar} P\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar} = P - p\,.$$

12 Establish expressions (you know them from your first course on quantum mechanics) for the momentum expectation values $\langle P\rangle$ and $\big\langle P^2\big\rangle$ in terms of the position wave function $\psi(x)$.

13 Determine the normalization constant A for the position wave function

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} A\sin(2\pi x/L) & \text{for} \quad -L < x < L\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad |x| > L \end{cases}$$

and then calculate $\langle X\rangle$, $\big\langle X^2\big\rangle$, $\langle P\rangle$, and $\big\langle P^2\big\rangle$.

14 Find the operator A whose expectation value is the probability of finding the object in the range $x > 0$. Express A in terms of the *sign function*

$$\operatorname{sgn}(x) = \begin{cases} +1 & \text{for} \quad x > 0\,, \\ -1 & \text{for} \quad x < 0\,. \end{cases}$$

Repeat for the range $x < 0$ and then check that the two operators add up to the identity.

15 In the context of (1.6.31), consider the kets $|u\rangle = \big(|1\rangle + \mathrm{i}|2\rangle\big)/\sqrt{2}$ and $|v\rangle = \big(|1\rangle - \mathrm{i}|2\rangle\big)/\sqrt{2}$ and evaluate $\frac{1}{2}\big(|u\rangle\langle u| + |v\rangle\langle v|\big)$. What do you conclude?

16 Show that the mapping of the operator A on the phase-space function $a(x,p)$ in (1.7.3) is linear. What is $a(x,p)$ for $A = f(X)$? What is it for $A = g(P)$?

17 Confirm that (1.7.2) and (1.7.3) are equivalent to

$$A = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\, K(x,p) a(x,p) \quad \text{with} \quad a(x,p) = \operatorname{tr}\big(K(x,p)^\dagger A\big)$$

for the Kirkwood* operators

$$K(x,p) = \frac{|x\rangle\langle p|}{\langle p|x\rangle}\,.$$

This says that the Kirkwood operators comprise a basis in the operator space. How does (1.7.19) follow?

18 Show that

$$\operatorname{tr}\big(K(x,p)^\dagger K(x',p')\big) = 2\pi\hbar\,\delta(x-x')\,\delta(p-p')\,.$$

In which sense does this state the orthogonality and the normalization of the Kirkwood operators?

19 Consider an operator $F = f(X,P)$ as in Section 1.7. Show that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar} F\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar} = f(X-x, P-p)\,.$$

*John Gamble Kirkwood (1907–1959)

20 Show that, more generally than the statements in (1.7.11), we have

$$\big[f(X,P),P\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\frac{\partial f(X,P)}{\partial X}\,, \qquad \big[X,f(X,P)\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\frac{\partial f(X,P)}{\partial P}\,,$$

where $f(X,P)$ is *any* operator function of X and P.

21 Is there a difference between $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial X}\dfrac{\partial}{\partial P}f(X,P)$ and $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial P}\dfrac{\partial}{\partial X}f(X,P)$?

22 Confirm that

$$\mathrm{tr}\bigg(X\frac{\partial}{\partial X}f(X,P)\bigg) = \mathrm{tr}\bigg(P\frac{\partial}{\partial P}f(X,P)\bigg) = -\mathrm{tr}\big(f(X,P)\big)$$

is true for certain functions of X and P. Which ones?

23 Find the X,P-ordered form of the commutator $\dfrac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[X^2,P^2\big]$.

24 Use the X,P-ordered and P,X-ordered forms of $\rho = |\,\rangle\langle\,|$ in (1.7.14) and (1.7.17) to evaluate $\mathrm{tr}(\rho)$ as a phase-space integral.

25 At the beginning of Section 1.8, there is reference to "special values of x' and p'" for which $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X/\hbar}$ and $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'P/\hbar}$ commute. What are these special values?

26 If $|a\rangle$ is an eigenket of A, $A|a\rangle = |a\rangle a$, then $f(A)|a\rangle = |a\rangle f(a)$. Why? Conclude that $U^\dagger|a\rangle$ is an eigenket of $f(U^\dagger A U)$.

27 What is $\langle x|\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X\,+\,x'P)/\hbar}$? What is $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X\,+\,x'P)/\hbar}|p\rangle$? Introduce the operator

$$R = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x'\,\mathrm{d}p'}{2\pi\hbar}\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X\,+\,x'P)/\hbar}$$

and find $\langle x|R$ and $R|p\rangle$.

28 Show that

$$\mathrm{tr}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(p'X\,+\,x'P)/\hbar}\;\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(p''X\,+\,x''P)/\hbar}\Big) = 2\pi\hbar\,\delta(x'-x'')\,\delta(p'-p'')\,.$$

29 For any (reasonable) operator function $A(X,P)$ we can define its *characteristic function*

$$a(x,p) = \mathrm{tr}\Big(A(X,P)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(xP\,+\,pX)/\hbar}\Big)\,.$$

This is a mapping of operator $A(X,P)$ on the phase-space function $a(x,p)$. [This $a(x,p)$ is *not* that in (1.7.3).] Show that the inverse map is given by

$$A(X,P) = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(xP+pX)/\hbar} a(x,p)\,.$$

30 Next, find $a(x,p)$ for $A(X,P) = X^n$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$.

Chapter 2

31 For the Hamilton operator of force-free motion,

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2\,,$$

wherein the mass M does not vary in time, evaluate $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}F$ for $F = X$, $F = P$, and $F = MX - tP$.

32 In Section 2.1, we infer the Heisenberg equation of motion in (2.1.39) from the Schrödinger equations of motion for kets and bras in (2.1.18) and (2.1.19). Show that this argument can be reversed, that is, take the Heisenberg equation for granted and infer the Schrödinger equation.

33 In (2.1.41) and (2.1.44) we have two particular cases of Heisenberg's equation of motion. The third case is that of the Hamilton operator, that is, $F = H$ in (2.1.39). What can you say about the time derivative of H?

34 How can you get $\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle$ from $\langle p,t|x,t_0\rangle$ without performing any Fourier transformations such as those in (2.2.13) or (2.2.14)?

Chapter 3

35 Recognize that the right-hand side in (3.1.9) is of the form

$$\delta(x-x';\epsilon) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathrm{i}\pi}}\frac{1}{\epsilon}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\left((x-x'/\epsilon\right)^2} = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{2\pi}\ \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(k\epsilon/2)^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}k(x-x')}\,.$$

Then argue that this provides a model for the delta function in the sense of the general recipe in (4.1.18) in *Basic Matters*.

36 Can you think of a general reason why (3.1.18) is true?

37 Of the three possibilities mentioned after (3.1.37), show that the third is the case — that is, $C(t_0) = 0$ — for the minimum-uncertainty wave function in (3.1.19). Why do you expect this?

38 Define the time-dependent position–momentum correlation $C(t)$ in accordance with

$$C(t) = \left\langle \frac{1}{2}\big[X(t)P(t) + P(t)X(t)\big] \right\rangle - \big\langle X(t)\big\rangle \big\langle P(t)\big\rangle$$

and express it in terms of expectation values at the initial time t_0.

39 For $Z(\varphi)$ in (3.1.40), show that

$$\big[Z(\varphi_1), Z(\varphi_2)\big] = \mathrm{i}\sin(\varphi_2 - \varphi_1)$$

and conclude that

$$\delta Z(\varphi_1)\, \delta Z(\varphi_2) \geq \frac{1}{2}\big|\sin(\varphi_2 - \varphi_1)\big|$$

holds for the product of the spreads of $Z(\varphi)$ for any two rotation angles φ_1 and φ_2. Then determine the minimal value of this product for two perpendicular directions ($\varphi_2 = \varphi_1 + \frac{1}{2}\pi$, that is) to establish

$$\delta X\, \delta P \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}\sqrt{1 + (2C/\hbar)^2}\,,$$

which implies the Heisenberg–Kennard uncertainty relation $\delta X\, \delta P \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}$. Recognize a special case of Schrödinger's inequality in Exercise 84 in *Basic Matters*.

40 For each value of φ, the eigenvalues of $Z(\varphi)$ are all real numbers z, with the respective eigenkets denoted by $|z, \varphi\rangle$,

$$Z(\varphi)\big|z, \varphi\big\rangle = \big|z, \varphi\big\rangle z\,.$$

Their orthonormality and completeness relations are

$$\big\langle z, \varphi\big|z', \varphi\big\rangle = \delta(z - z')\,, \qquad \int \mathrm{d}z\, \big|z, \varphi\big\rangle\big\langle z, \varphi\big| = 1$$

for each φ. Determine the position wave functions $\langle x|z, \varphi\rangle$.

41 Show that the area of the uncertainty ellipse, see (3.1.45), is never less than $2\pi\hbar$.

42 Demonstrate that the area of the uncertainty ellipse is constant in time, as asserted at (3.1.46).

43 Confirm the statement after (3.2.8), namely that the center of the uncertainly ellipse follows a parabola, and comment on the classical significance of this phase-space trajectory.

44 Follow up on (3.2.24) and find the xx time transformation function $\langle x,t|x',t_0\rangle$ by a suitable Fourier integration.

45 Supplement (3.2.24) by $\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle$ and then use it to find $\psi(x,t)$ for

$$\psi(p,t_0)=\frac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta P}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{4}(p/\delta P)^2}\,. \tag{Ex.1}$$

Do you get the expected result for $F\to 0$?

46 To confirm (3.3.28), establish first that

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta(\Delta p)&=\delta t\,F(t)-\delta t_0\,F(t_0)\,,\\
\delta(\Delta x)&=\delta t\,\frac{1}{M}\Delta p-\delta t_0\,\frac{T}{M}F(t_0)\,,\\
\delta(\hbar\Phi)&=\delta t\,\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\,F(t)-\delta t_0\left(\frac{(\Delta p)^2}{2M}-\left(\Delta x-\frac{T}{M}\Delta p\right)F(t_0)\right)
\end{aligned}$$

and verify then that the right-hand side of (3.3.28) has been identified correctly.

47 Find $\Phi(t,t_0)$ of (3.3.29) for a constant force $F(t)=F$ and then verify that the result of (3.2.24) is correctly reproduced.

48 The state of the system is specified by the statistical operator at $t=t_0$,

$$\rho(X,P,t_0)=\rho_0(X,P)\,.$$

What is $\rho(X,P,t)$ when a time-dependent force is acting?

49 Supplement (3.4.6) with the commutators $\big[X(t),P(t_0)\big]$, $\big[P(t),X(t_0)\big]$, and $\big[P(t),P(t_0)\big]$.

50 In the context of (3.4.17), use the known solutions (3.4.5) of the equations of motion to verify explicitly that the Hamilton operator in (3.4.1) does not depend on time, that is,

$$\frac{1}{2M}P(t)^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X(t)^2 = \frac{1}{2M}P(t_0)^2 + \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 X(t_0)^2\,.$$

51 Use the method that yields the xx transformation function in (3.4.24) to derive the xp time transformation function $\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle$ and verify that it is consistent with the xx time transformation function.

52 Use the xx transformation function in (3.4.24) to find $\psi(x,t)$ for the initial wave function $\psi(x,t_0) = \dfrac{(2\pi)^{-1/4}}{\sqrt{\delta X}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{4}(x/\delta X)^2}$.

53 Ladder operators of Section 3.4.1, and Fock states: Use (3.4.41) to find $\langle n|X|n\rangle$, $\langle n|X^2|n\rangle$, and then δX for the nth Fock state. Similarly, find δP for $|n\rangle$. How large is their product $\delta X\,\delta P$?

54 Supplement the position wave function in (3.4.74) with the momentum wave function $\langle p|a\rangle$.

55 Illustrate (3.4.78) for $f(A^\dagger, A) = (A^\dagger A)^2$.

56 Verify (3.4.80).

57 Pretend that you do not know the eigenvalues of $A^\dagger A$. Proceed from $A^\dagger A|\nu\rangle = |\nu\rangle\nu$ (with a temporarily unkown eigenvalue ν), establish that the entire function $\langle a^*|\nu\rangle$ obeys the differential equation

$$\left(a^*\frac{\partial}{\partial a^*} - \nu\right)\langle a^*|\nu\rangle = 0\,,$$

and infer that ν must be a nonnegative integer.

58 Show that $|0\rangle\langle 0| = \mathrm{e}^{-A^\dagger;\,A}$, and then extend this to

$$|n\rangle\langle n| = \frac{1}{n!}A^{\dagger n}\,\mathrm{e}^{-A^\dagger;\,A}A^n\,.$$

Use this to prove the completeness of the Fock states, that is,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}|n\rangle\langle n| = 1\,.$$

59 Show that the normally ordered form of any function $f\big(A^\dagger A\big)$ of $A^\dagger A$ is

$$f\big(A^\dagger A\big) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{f(n)}{n!} A^{\dagger n}\, \mathrm{e}^{-A^\dagger;\, A} A^n \,.$$

Use this to find the normally ordered form of $(1-\lambda)^{A^\dagger A}$, where λ is a number.

60 Begin with

$$A^\dagger A = f_1\big(A^\dagger A\big)\,,$$
$$A^{\dagger 2} A^2 = A^\dagger A\big(A^\dagger A - 1\big) = f_2\big(A^\dagger A\big)\,,$$

and find a recurrence relation (in m) for

$$A^{\dagger m} A^m = f_m\big(A^\dagger A\big) = A^\dagger f_{m-1}\big(A^\dagger A\big) A\,.$$

Then conclude that

$$A^{\dagger m} A^m = \frac{\big(A^\dagger A\big)!}{\big(A^\dagger A - m\big)!}\,.$$

61 Now infer that

$$\binom{A^\dagger A}{m} = \frac{A^{\dagger m} A^m}{m!}$$

holds for binomial factors and use this for another derivation of the normally ordered from of $(1-\lambda)^{A^\dagger A}$.

62 In Section 3.4.3, the parameterization (3.4.99) is verified by considering $\delta(x'-x'') = \langle x'|x''\rangle$. Give a second verification that proceeds from

$$\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p'/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} = \big\langle x'\big|p'\big\rangle \stackrel{?}{=} \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar} \frac{\big\langle x'\big|a'\big\rangle\big\langle a^*\big|p'\big\rangle}{\big\langle a^*\big|a'\big\rangle}\bigg|_{\substack{a'\,=\,x/l \\ a^*\,=\,-ilp/\hbar}}\,.$$

63 Similarly, verify that (3.4.98) is a permissible parameterization in (3.4.97).

64 Use the parameterization (3.4.98) to verify that the orthonormality of the Fock states, $\delta_{nm} = \langle n|m\rangle = \langle n|1|m\rangle$, is consistent with this completeness relation for the coherent states.

65 Do the same for the parameterization (3.4.99).

66 Exploit the orthonormality of the Fock states once more to verify that

$$a' = s\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\,, \quad a^* = s\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi} = a'^*\,, \quad \mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p = 2\hbar\,\mathrm{d}s\,s\,\mathrm{d}\phi$$

with $s \geq 0$ and ϕ from any convenient 2π range is another suitable parameterization for (3.4.97). How is it related to parameterization (3.4.98)?

67 $F = f(A^\dagger, A)$ is the normally ordered form of operator F; show that

$$\mathrm{tr}(F) = \int \frac{\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi\hbar}\, f\!\left(-\mathrm{i}\frac{lp}{\hbar}, \frac{x}{l}\right).$$

68 Combine the $\langle x|a\rangle$ wave function of (3.4.74) with the completeness relation of the Fock states in Exercise 58 and the generating function for the Hermite polynomials,

$$\mathrm{e}^{2ty\,-\,t^2} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!}\mathrm{H}_n(y)\,,$$

to find the position wave functions $\langle x|n\rangle$ of the Fock states.

69 Use the momentum wave function $\langle p|a\rangle$ of Exercise 54 and follow the strategy of Exercise 68 to find the momentum wave functions $\langle p|n\rangle$ of the Fock states.

70 The ladder operators $A_\pm$ of (3.5.33): Find their response to the rotation $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi L_3/\hbar}$, that is,

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi L_3/\hbar} A_\pm\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi L_3/\hbar} = ?$$

71 For $N = 1$ and $N = 2$, supplement (3.5.41) by expressing the Fock states $|n_1, n_2\rangle$ as linear superpositions of the kets $|n_+, n_-\rangle = |N, m\rangle$.

72 Express

$$X_\pm = \frac{l}{\sqrt{2}}\big(A_\pm^\dagger + A_\pm\big)\,, \qquad P_\pm = \frac{\hbar/l}{\sqrt{2}}\big(\mathrm{i}A_\pm^\dagger - \mathrm{i}A_\pm\big)$$

in terms of X_1, X_2, P_1, and P_2. Then use these expressions to find the commutation relations between X_+, X_-, P_+, and P_-. Do you get what you expect?

Chapter 4

73 Consider the hermitian operator $\Gamma = \frac{1}{2}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} + \boldsymbol{P}\cdot\boldsymbol{R}\big)$ and evaluate $\big[\boldsymbol{R},\Gamma\big]$ and $\big[\Gamma,\boldsymbol{P}\,\big]$.

74 Now find $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\lambda\Gamma}\boldsymbol{R}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\lambda\Gamma}$ and $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\lambda\Gamma}\boldsymbol{P}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\lambda\Gamma}$, where λ is a real parameter.

75 Obtain the commutators in (4.1.19) by applying (4.1.7) and (4.1.10) to $f\big(\boldsymbol{R},\boldsymbol{P}\big) = \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\big(\boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}\big) = \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{L}$.

76 Consider two arbitrary vector operators $\boldsymbol{F}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{F}_2$. Show that

$$\big[\boldsymbol{F}_1\cdot\boldsymbol{F}_2,\boldsymbol{L}\big] = 0\,.$$

77 Show that $\boldsymbol{L}\times\boldsymbol{L} = \mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{L}$.

78 Demonstrate the generalization thereof, $\boldsymbol{F}\times\boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{L}\times\boldsymbol{F} = 2\mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{F}$, valid for any vector operator $\boldsymbol{F}$.

79 Use $[X_j,P_k] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\,\delta_{jk}$ to verify (4.2.2).

80 Why are we sure that, along with the change of m, there is not also a change of l in (4.2.8)?

81 Consider an arbitrary vector operator $\boldsymbol{F}$ and show that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\phi\boldsymbol{e}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{L}/\hbar}\boldsymbol{F}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi\boldsymbol{e}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{L}/\hbar} = \boldsymbol{e}\,\boldsymbol{e}\cdot\boldsymbol{F} + \boldsymbol{e}\times\big(\boldsymbol{F}\times\boldsymbol{e}\big)\cos(\phi) - \boldsymbol{e}\times\boldsymbol{F}\sin(\phi)\,,$$

where unit vector $\boldsymbol{e}$ specifies the axis of rotation and ϕ is the rotation angle.

82 What can you say about $u_{n_r m}(y)$ in (4.3.19) when $y \gg 1$ or $0 < y \ll 1$?

83 Explain why E does not depend on m in (4.4.3).

84 As a follow-up to (4.4.8), first get

$$\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla} = \boldsymbol{e}_\phi\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} - \boldsymbol{e}_\theta\frac{1}{\sin(\theta)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}$$

and then square it,

$$(\boldsymbol{r}\times\boldsymbol{\nabla})^2 = \frac{1}{\sin(\theta)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\sin(\theta)\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} + \frac{1}{\sin(\theta)^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\,.$$

85 Combine the result of Exercise 84 with another statement in Section 4.4 and infer that

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 = \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} r + \frac{1}{r^2}\left(\frac{1}{\sin(\theta)}\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta}\sin(\theta)\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} + \frac{1}{\sin(\theta)^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\phi^2}\right)$$

is the spherical-coordinate version of

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_1^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_2^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_3^2}\,,$$

the so-called Laplace differential operator or simply *Laplacian*.

Chapter 5

86 Confirm (5.2.24) on the basis of $\langle n_r, m | n_r', m' \rangle = \delta_{n_r n_r'}\delta_{mm'}$.

87 Follow-up to (5.2.30): Use the definition of $\mathrm{L}_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$ in (5.2.13) to find the Laguerre polynomials that you need for $D_{10}(r)$, $D_{20}(r)$, and $D_{21}(r)$. Then employ your favorite software to produce plots of

$$\frac{a_0}{Z} D_{nl}\Big(\frac{a_0}{Z}x\Big)$$

as functions of x, for $n = 1,\ l = 0$ and $n = 2,\ l = 0, 1$.

Chapter 6

88 As a generalization of the trial wave functions in (6.3.32) and (6.3.33), try $\psi(y) = \exp\big(-|y|^\gamma\big)$ with different values for γ. Use Euler's* factorial integral

$$\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}x\, x^\nu\, \mathrm{e}^{-x} = \nu!\,, \qquad \nu > -1\,,$$

to express the upper bound in terms of factorials (of noninteger numbers). For $\gamma = 1$ and $\gamma = 2$, this reproduces the values of (6.3.18) and (6.3.36), respectively. But what do you get for $\gamma = \frac{3}{2}$ or $\gamma = \frac{7}{4}$?

*Leonhard EULER (1707–1783)

89 Use $\psi(y) = y\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}y^2}$ to estimate the energy E_1 of the first excited state for the Hamilton operator in (6.3.5) and compare with the exact answer

$$E_1 = 1.85576\left(\frac{\hbar^2 F^2}{M}\right)^{1/3}.$$

90 Find the scale-invariant expression for the upper bound for

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 + \frac{\lambda}{n}\big|X\big|^n, \qquad \lambda > 0\,,$$

with arbitrary power $n > 0$. Try the trial wave functions $\psi(y) = \mathrm{e}^{-|y|}$ and $\psi(y) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}y^2}$ and compare the upper bounds for $n = 2, 3$, and 4.

91 Find an upper bound on the ground-state energy of

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 - \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa|X|}$$

with $\kappa > 0$; try to do well with a "simple" trial function.

92 Use gaussian trial wave functions to find an upper bound on the ground-state energy of

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 - \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{\sqrt{2}M}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(\kappa X)^2} \quad \text{with} \quad \kappa > 0\,.$$

93 Justify the remark at (6.4.14) by indeed deriving it as a consequence of the Hellmann–Feynman theorem.

94 Supplement (6.4.18) by an explicit expression for $|n^{(2)}\rangle$.

95 In (6.4.14) and (6.4.20), we have expressions for $E_n^{(1)}$ and $E_n^{(2)}$. Show that, more generally,

$$E_n^{(k)} = \big\langle n^{(0)}\big|H_1\big|n^{(k-1)}\big\rangle$$

holds.

96 The zeroth and first-order terms of E_n for the perturbed harmonic oscillator of (6.4.28) are given in (6.4.33). Now find the second-order energy correction to the ground-state energy, that is, calculate $E_0^{(2)}$.

97 Consider the normalization factor Z_n of (6.4.35). Regard H_0 as specified by $|n^{(0)}\rangle$ and $E_n^{(0)}$ and show that

$$Z_n = \frac{\partial E_n}{\partial E_n^{(0)}}$$

to second order (which is actually true in general).

98 Show that (6.5.11) can also be presented as

$$\big|n\big\rangle = \frac{E_n - E_n^{(0)}}{E_n - H_0 - Q_n H_1}\big|n^{(0)}\big\rangle\,,$$

where $\dfrac{1}{\text{operator}} = (\text{operator})^{-1}$ for brevity.

99 Consider

$$H = \underbrace{\hbar\omega A^\dagger A}_{=H_0} + \underbrace{\hbar\Omega\Big(A^{\dagger 2} + A^2\Big)}_{=H_1}\,.$$

Find the ground-state energy to second order in Ω, both by the Rayleigh–Schrödinger and by the Brillouin–Wigner method. Compare with the exact ground-state energy.

100 Follow up on (6.7.25)–(6.7.27) and calculate the polarizability of hydrogenic atoms in the ground state by using the Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory.

101 Apply the three-dimensional WKB quantization rule in (6.8.45) to the potential energy of an isotropic harmonic oscillator,

$$V(r) = \frac{1}{2}M\omega^2 r^2\,,$$

and to that of a hydrogenic atom,

$$V(r) = -\frac{Ze^2}{r}\,.$$

In both cases, you should get the exact eigenvalues.

102 For the square-well potential,

$$V(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for} \quad |x| > a/2\,, \\ -V_0 < 0 & \text{for} \quad |x| < a/2\,, \end{cases}$$

it is established in *Basic Matters* that the total number $N_{\rm tot}$ of bound states is such that

$$N_{\rm tot} - 1 < \frac{a}{\pi\hbar}\sqrt{2MV_0} < N_{\rm tot}\,.$$

Calculate $\nu_{\mathcal{E}=0}$ for this potential and compare.

Hints

1, 2 What do you associate with the word *projector*?

3 Remember (1.2.17).

4 No hint needed.

5 Take a look at (1.2.33).

6 One standard argument exploits that $|\,\rangle = |a\rangle\alpha + |b\rangle\beta$ has a nonnegative length for all complex amplitudes α and β.

7 The xp transformation function in (1.4.11) is useful.

8 No hint needed.

9 You should find that $f(X)$ is a normal operator, that is, $f(X)$ commutes with $f(X)^\dagger$.

10 Once more, the xp transformation function in (1.4.11) is useful.

11 Recall how X and P are expressed in terms of the eigenkets and eigenbras.

12 The lesson of Exercise 10 is pertinent.

13 Be careful when evaluating the second derivative of $\psi(x)$, if you need it.

14 How is the sign function sgn( ) related to the unit step function $\eta(\,)$?

15 You should recognize another way of blending ρ.

16 This is straightforward.

17 Two matters of inspection.

18 Recall that $\mathrm{tr}\big(A^\dagger B\big)$ is the Hilbert–Schmidt* inner product for two operators A and B and note that it is normalization to the Dirac delta function,

*Erhard SCHMIDT (1876–1959)

quite analogous to the normalization of the position and momentum kets and bras.

19 Recall the lesson of Exercise 11.

20 Consider infinitesimal values of x or p in Exercise 16.

21 The Jacobi identity in (3.2.6) of *Basic Matters* will help.

22 Exercise 62 in *Basic Matters* is helpful. The traces must be meaningful; not every operator $f(X, P)$ has a well-defined trace.

23 This is mostly a question about P^2X^2.

24 You will have a use for (1.7.19).

25 Infer the answer from (1.8.5).

26 Just rely on the meaning of *eigenket*.

27 Combine (1.8.18) with statements in Exercise 10.

28 Turn the product of the unitary operators into its X, P-ordered form and then use (1.7.19).

29 It is enough to show this for all ket-bras of the form $|x'\rangle\langle p'|$. Why?

30 It is easier to first find $a(x, p)$ for $A(X, P) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p'X}$ and then exploit the linearity of the $A(X, P) \leftrightarrow a(x, p)$ mapping.

31 Pay attention to the difference between $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}$ and $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}$ in (2.1.39).

32 You may have a use for the von Neumann equation.

33 While the question has a simple answer, the answer is worth remembering.

34 Recall how $\langle 1|2\rangle$ is related to $\langle 2|1\rangle$.

35 Combine (3.1.6) and (3.1.9) for $t - t_0 > 0$ (why is this restriction not essential?) and then regard $D(\phi) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\phi/2)^2}$ as a limit of other $D(\phi)$s that meet the criteria of the general recipe.

36 This follows from energy conservation. How?

37 Note the symmetry properties of this wave function.

38 This supplements the statements in (3.1.34).

39 Recall, or establish, that

$$-\sqrt{a^2+b^2} \le a\sin(\phi) + b\cos(\phi) \le \sqrt{a^2+b^2}$$

for any two real numbers a and b and real angles ϕ. When do the equal signs hold?

40 What is $\langle x|Z(\varphi)$? Solve the resulting differential equation obeyed by $\langle x|z,\varphi\rangle$.

41 Remember the lesson of Exercise 39.

42 Various pieces of information are available in (3.1.34), (3.1.45), and Exercise 38.

43 No hint needed.

44, 45 Two applications of (3.1.7).

46 Exploit (3.3.9), (3.3.10), and (3.3.29).

47 This is straightforward.

48 Remember (2.1.45).

49 While no hint is needed, check that you get what you expect for particular values of ϕ, such as $\phi = 0$, $\frac{1}{2}\pi$, or π.

50 Treat products of $X(t_0)$ and $P(t_0)$ with care.

51 Rather than the second equation in (3.4.7) and its follow-up in (3.4.10), you now need to work with the p derivative of $\langle x,t|p,t_0\rangle$ which brings $X(t_0)$ into the game. Then, express $P(t)$ and $X(t_0)$ in terms of $X(t)$ and $P(t_0)$ and proceed.

52 Another application of (3.1.7).

53 Note that $\langle n|A|n\rangle = 0$ and $\langle n|A^2|n\rangle = 0$, for instance, while the expectation values of $AA^\dagger$ and $A^\dagger A$ are nonzero.

54 Proceed from

$$\langle p| = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \langle p|x\rangle\langle x| = \int \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}px/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\langle x| \,.$$

You should find

$$\langle p|a\rangle = \pi^{-1/4}(\hbar/l)^{-1/2}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(lp/\hbar)^2 \,-\, \mathrm{i}\sqrt{2}(lp/\hbar)a \,+\, \frac{1}{2}a^2} \,.$$

55 No hint needed.

56 Evaluate $\langle x|A^\dagger|a\rangle$ by applying $A^\dagger$ on $\langle x|$ or on $|a\rangle$ and then compare.

57 Note that $z \mapsto z^\nu$ is an entire function when ν is a nonnegative integer and only then. What goes wrong for other values of ν?

58 Use the procedure of (3.4.95) for $F = |0\rangle\langle 0|$ and recall (3.4.66) and (3.4.67).

59 Proceed from

$$f\big(A^\dagger A\big) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \big|n\big\rangle f(n) \big\langle n\big| \,.$$

60 Remember (3.4.143) or use the adjoint relation.

61 Proceed from the statement of the binomial theorem,

$$(1-\lambda)^{A^\dagger A} = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \binom{A^\dagger A}{m} (-\lambda)^m \,,$$

and arrive at an ordered exponential function. Why do we not need to restrict the values of λ to ensure convergence? Check that you get what you expect for $\lambda = 0$ and $\lambda = 1$.

62 You have a use for the momentum wave function found in Exercise 54.

63–65 No further hints needed.

66 Recognize polar coordinates in the x, p phase space.

67 This is an application of (3.4.99).

68 Try $t = a/\sqrt{2}$ and $y = x/l$ in conjunction with (3.4.103).

69 Choose t and y fittingly.

70 Differentiate with respect to ϕ and meet the commutator of $A_\pm$ and L_3.

71 A straightforward application of ladder operators to Fock states.

72 No hint needed.

73 Apply (4.1.7) and (4.1.10).

74 Differentiate with respect to λ. You should recognize a scaling transformation.

75 Remember that $\boldsymbol{b} \cdot \big(\boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{P}\big) = \big(\boldsymbol{b} \times \boldsymbol{R}\big) \cdot \boldsymbol{P} = \boldsymbol{R} \cdot \big(\boldsymbol{P} \times \boldsymbol{b}\big)$.

76 Exploit the product rule for commutators, here

$$\big[\boldsymbol{F}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{F}_2, \boldsymbol{L}\big] = \boldsymbol{F}_1 \cdot \big[\boldsymbol{F}_2, \boldsymbol{L}\big] + \big[\boldsymbol{F}_1, \boldsymbol{L}\big] \cdot \boldsymbol{F}_2 \,.$$

77, 78 Consider each cartesian coordinate separately.

79 No hint needed.

80 What is $\big[L_\pm, \boldsymbol{L}^2\big]$?

81 Differentiate with respect to ϕ.

82 Which terms in $-\dfrac{m^2 - 1/4}{y^2} - y^2 + 2|m| + 4n_r + 2$ are most important?

83 Consider (4.4.2).

84 This is straightforward; just remember that there is an unwritten function of r, θ, ϕ to which these differential operators are applied.

85 The other statement is (4.4.16).

86 Note that (5.2.22) is relevant.

87 No hint needed.

88 For example, you should get

$$\int \mathrm{d}y \left|\psi(y)\right|^2 = 2\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}y\ \mathrm{e}^{-2y^\gamma}$$
$$\xrightarrow{y=(x/2)^{1/\gamma}} = 2\int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{2\gamma}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{1/\gamma-1}\mathrm{e}^{-x} = 2^{1-1/\gamma}\left(\gamma^{-1}\right)!\,.$$

89 You can use the scale-invariant expression in (6.3.31). Why?

90 Modify the argument that produced (6.3.31) suitably.

91 Simplest is $\psi(x) \propto \mathrm{e}^{-\alpha|x|}$ with $\alpha > 0$.

92, 93 No hints needed.

94 Find a preliminary expression for $\left\langle m^{(0)}\middle|n^{(2)}\right\rangle$ from (6.4.19) and then proceed.

95 This is straightforward.

96 The result of Exercise 94 could be useful.

97 Combine (6.4.18), (6.4.21), and (6.4.35).

98 Show that $\left(1 - A^{-1}B\right)^{-1} = (A-B)^{-1}A$ and then proceed.

99 Express H in terms of X and P for getting the exact energies.

100 You could apply (6.4.22) to (6.7.2).

101 Show that, for $0 < a < b$,

$$\int_a^b \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{x}\sqrt{(b-x)(x-a)} = \frac{\pi}{2}\left(\sqrt{b}-\sqrt{a}\right)^2 = \pi\left(\frac{a+b}{2} - \sqrt{ab}\right)$$

and then use this identity.

102 You should find that $\nu_{\mathcal{E}=0} = \dfrac{a}{\pi\hbar}\sqrt{2MV_0}$. What, then, do you conclude?

This page intentionally left blank

Index

Note: Page numbers preceded by the letters BM or PE refer to *Basic Matters* and *Perturbed Evolution*, respectively.

above-barrier reflection BM208
action BM127, PE33
action principle *see* quantum action principle
adiabatic approximation PE71
adiabatic population transfer PE71–73
adjoint 10, PE1
– of a bra 10, BM34, PE1
– of a column BM25
– of a ket 10, BM34, PE1
– of a ket-bra BM37
– of a linear combination 11
– of a product 18, BM37
– of an operator BM37
Airy, George Bidell BM155
Airy function BM155, 207
algebraic completeness
– of complementary pairs PE12–14
– of position and momentum 29–33
amplitude
– column of ∼s BM92, 94
– in and out ∼s PE86
– incoming ∼ PE82
– normalized ∼ BM181
– probability ∼ PE2
–– composition law for ∼∼s PE5
– probability ∼ 2, 13, BM20–29, 33, 34, 36, 105
–– time dependent ∼∼ BM90–94, 102
– reflected ∼ BM181, 188
– relative ∼ BM181
– transmitted ∼ BM181, 188
angular momentum 93, PE25
– addition PE119–122
– and harmonic oscillators PE176
– commutation relations PE117
– eigenstates 102
–– orthonormality 103
– eigenvalues 102, PE119
– intrinsic ∼ *see* spin
– ladder operators 102, PE118
– orbital ∼ *see* orbital angular momentum
– Schwinger representation PE176
– total ∼ PE117
– vector operator 93, PE105
angular velocity BM87
– vector BM91
as-if reality 27, BM55
Aspect, Alain BM63
atom pairs BM57–64
– entangled ∼ BM57–64

– statistical operator BM58, 61
axis vector 116
azimuth 109
– is 2π periodic 109
azimuthal wave functions 120
– orthonormality 121

Baker, Henry Frederick 36
Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff relation 35, 36, 38
Bargmann, Valentine 81
bases
– completeness 6, BM37, PE24
– for bras 15, BM34, 46, 59, 70, PE3, 6
– for kets 15, 108, BM33, 46, 59, 67, 70, 99, PE3, 6, 7, 68, 106
– for operators 169, BM198, 199, PE166
– for vectors 4, BM33
– harmonic oscillator ∼ BM170
– mutually unbiased ∼ PE7
– orthonormal ∼ BM36
– unbiased ∼ PE6, 11, 24
– unitary operator maps ∼ BM75
Bell, John Stewart BM4, 5
Bell correlation BM5, 6, 57
Bell inequality BM7, 62
– is wrong BM64
– violated by quantum correlations BM60, 63
Bergmann, Klaas PE73
Bessel, Friedrich Wilhelm PE107
Bessel functions, spherical ∼ *see* spherical Bessel functions
beta function integral PE37
Binnig, Gerd BM191
binomial factor 175
binomial theorem 185
bit
– classical ∼ BM68
– quantum ∼ BM68
Bloch, Felix BM54
Bloch vector BM54
Bohr, Niels Henrik David 113, PE14, 104, 132
Bohr energies 125, 150
Bohr magneton BM202, PE132
Bohr radius 113
Bohr shells 125, PE124, 160
Bohr's principle of complementarity *see* complementarity principle
Born, Max 31, BM52, 115, PE43
Born rule BM51–55
Born series PE43, 48, 77, 102
– evolution operator PE43
– formal summation PE47
– scattering operator PE45
– self-repeating pattern PE45
– transition operator PE102
Born–Heisenberg commutator *see* Heisenberg commutator
Bose, Satyendranath PE142
Bose–Einstein statistics PE142
bosons PE142, 148
bound states BM181
– delta potential BM173–177
– hard-sphere potential PE113
– hydrogenic atoms 116
– square-well potential BM182–186
bra 9–15, BM31–34, PE1
– adjoint of a ∼ BM34, PE1
– analog of row-type vector 10
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for bras
– column of ∼s BM36, 50, 93
– eigen∼ BM42–46
– infinite row for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of bras
– metrical dimension 17
– orthonormal ∼s BM36
– phase arbitrariness 28
– physical ∼ 12
– row for ∼ BM96, 101
– tensor product of ∼s BM59
bra-ket *see* bracket
bracket 12, 21, BM34–38
– and tensor products BM59
– invariance of ∼s BM75
– is inner product 11, BM35
Brillouin, Léon 143, 158

Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory 143–148
Bunyakovsky, Viktor Yakovlevich 13

Campbell, John Edward 36
Carlini, Francesco 158
cartesian coordinates 105
Cauchy, Augustin-Louis 13
Cauchy–Bunyakovsky–Schwarz inequality 13, 167
causal link BM6
causality BM1, 2
– Einsteinian ∼ BM6, 7
center-of-mass motion
– Hamilton operator PE140
– momentum operator PE140
– position operator PE140
centrifugal potential 111, PE106, 110
– force-free motion 111
classical turning point 155, 156, 159, 165
classically allowed 155–157, 159, 165, PE83
classically forbidden 155–157, PE83
Clauser, John Francis BM63
Clausius, Rudolf Julius Emanuel 128
Clebsch, Rudolf Friedrich Alfred PE122
Clebsch–Gordan coefficients PE122
– recurrence relation PE135
closure relation *see* completeness relation
coherence length BM206
coherent states 81, PE62
– and Fock states 83–84
– completeness relation 81–83, 175, 176
– momentum wave functions 176
– position wave functions 77
coin tossing BM68
column BM25
– adjoint of a ∼ BM25
– eigen∼ BM96
– for ket BM96, 101
– normalized ∼ BM16, 25
– of bras BM36, 50, 93
– of coordinates 4
– of probability amplitudes BM92, 94
– orthogonal ∼s BM25
– two-component ∼s BM15
column-type vector 4
– analog of ket 10
commutation relation
– angular momentum PE117
– ladder operators 78, BM164
– velocity PE126
commutator BM83
– different times 67, 173
– Jacobi identity BM84
– position–momentum ∼ 31, 97, BM115
– product rule 31, 186, BM84
– sum rule 31, BM83
complementarity principle
– phenomenology PE27
– technical formulation PE14
completeness relation 6, 14, BM37, 69, 74, PE3, 20, 22, 24
– coherent states 81–83, 175, 176
– eigenstates of Pauli operators BM46
– Fock states 174
– force-free states BM151
– momentum states 15, BM115
– position states 15, BM106
– time dependence 38, BM81
conditional probabilities BM65
constant force BM153–158, PE35–36
– Hamilton operator 58, BM153, PE35
– Heisenberg equation 58, BM153, PE35
– no-force limit BM155–158
– Schrödinger equation 60, BM153, 154
– spread in momentum 59, 61
– spread in position 59

– time transformation function 61, 173, PE36
– uncertainty ellipse 59
constant of motion PE130
constant restoring force 132, 161
– ground-state energy 134
context BM67
contour integration BM176, PE95
correlation
– position–momentum ∼ 55, 59, 172
– quantum ∼s BM60
Coulomb, Charles-Augustin de 113, PE90
Coulomb potential 113, PE90, 91
– limit of Yukawa potential PE91
Coulomb problem *see* hydrogenic atoms
cyclic permutation PE7, 16
– unitary operator PE7
cyclotron frequency PE128

de Broglie, Louis-Victor 159, BM117, PE83
de Broglie relation BM117
de Broglie wavelength 159, BM117, 123, 204, PE83
deflection angle PE90, 145
degeneracy
– and symmetry 90, 116, BM150
– hydrogenic atoms 116
– of eigenenergies BM150
degree of freedom PE6
– composite ∼ PE15–16
– continuous ∼ PE17, 25
– polar angle PE25
– prime ∼ PE16
– radial motion PE25
delta function 12, BM107–109, 115, 119, 207, PE20
– antiderivative 163, BM208
– Fourier representation 17, BM119, PE21
– is a distribution BM107
– model for ∼ 171, BM108, 109, PE62, 182
– more complicated argument 19, BM152
– of position operator BM174
delta potential BM173–181
– as a limit BM186–187
– bound state BM173–177
– ground-state energy BM187
– negative eigenvalue BM176
– reflection probability BM181
– scattering states BM178–181
– Schrödinger equation BM175, 178
– transmission probability BM181
delta symbol 4, BM69, 106, PE3, 20
– general version 149, PE13
– modulo-N version PE180
delta-shell potential PE176
density matrix *see* statistical operator
Descartes, René 3, BM40
determinant BM43, 44
– as product of eigenvalues PE68
– Slater ∼ PE144, 159
determinism BM1, 2
– lack of ∼ BM4, 7, 8, PE26
– no hidden ∼ BM4–7
deterministic chaos BM7, 8
detuning PE66
dipole moment
– electric ∼ 154
– magnetic ∼ *see* magnetic moment
dipole–dipole interaction BM98
Dirac, Paul Adrien Maurice 9, BM35, 106, PE20, 142
Dirac bracket *see* bracket
Dirac picture PE45
Dirac's delta function *see* delta function
Dirac's stroke of genius 11
dot product *see* inner product
downhill motion BM155
dyadic 5
– matrix for ∼ 6
– orthogonal ∼ 9
dynamical variables BM87
– time dependence PE28
Dyson, Freeman John PE47

Dyson series PE47, 48, 77

Eberly, Joseph Henry PE73
Eckart, Carl Henry PE134
effective potential energy 111, PE158
eigenbra BM42–46, 70, 81, PE2
– equation BM42, 81, PE2
eigenenergies BM95
eigenket BM42–46, 70, 81, PE1
– equation BM42, 81, PE1
– orbital angular momentum 104
eigenvalue BM42–48, 70, 81, PE2
– of a hermitian operator BM77
– of a unitary operator BM76
– orbital angular momentum 104
– trace as sum of ∼s BM198
eigenvector equation BM42
Einstein, Albert BM6, 46, PE142
Einsteinian causality BM6, 7
electric field
– homogeneous ∼ 150
– weak ∼ 154
electron 113
– angular momentum PE123–124
– Hamilton operator for two ∼s PE139
– in magnetic field
–– Hamilton operator PE132
electrostatic interaction 113
energy
– and Hamilton function 39
– Hamilton operator and ∼ values 39
energy conservation 156
energy eigenvalues
– continuum of ∼ BM181
– discrete ∼ BM181
energy spread BM144, 146
entangled state BM60
– maximally ∼ BM200
entanglement BM60
entire function 80
equation of motion
– Hamilton's ∼ 42, PE28
– Heisenberg's ∼ 42, 43, BM2, 84, PE27
– interaction picture PE65
– Liouville's ∼ 44, PE29
– Newton's ∼ BM2, 128
– Schrödinger's ∼ 40, BM2, 83, PE27
– von Neumann's ∼ 44, BM86
Esaki, Leo BM191
Euler, Leonhard 178, BM28, 127, PE37, 152
Euler's beta function integral PE37
Euler's factorial integral 178, PE152
Euler's identity BM28
Euler–Lagrange equation BM127, 130
even state (*see also* odd state) 138, BM153, 163, 178, 183
evolution operator 39, BM143, 149, PE41, 43, 74
– Born series PE43
– dynamical variables PE74
– group property PE44
– Schrödinger equation PE75
expectation value 21, 25, BM49
– of hermitian operator 168
– probabilities as ∼s 24, BM49
expected value BM49
exponential decay law PE56

face, do not lose 134
factorial
– Euler's integral 178, PE152
– Stirling's approximation BM161
Fermi, Enrico PE48, 142, 162
Fermi's golden rule *see* golden rule
Fermi–Dirac statistics PE142
fermions PE142, 148
Feynman, Richard Phillips 125, PE133
flipper BM14, 16, 19
– anti∼ BM19
Fock, Vladimir Alexandrovich 77, BM164, PE159
Fock states 77, 86, 89, 174, BM164–168

– and coherent states 83–84
– completeness relation 174
– generating function 83
– momentum wave functions 176
– orthonormality 175, 176, BM169
– position wave functions 175, BM168, 169
– two-dimensional oscillator 94
force 130, BM148, PE85, 169
– ∼s scatter PE85
– constant ∼ *see* constant force
– Lorentz ∼ PE125
– of short range BM174
– on magnetic moment BM11
force-free motion BM131, 135–147, 150–153, 156, PE127
– centrifugal potential 111
– completeness of energy eigenstates BM151
– Hamilton operator 49, 171, BM131, 135, PE30
– Heisenberg equation 49, BM137, 138
– orthonormal states BM153
– probability flux PE173
– Schrödinger equation 49, 50, BM135, 150
– spread in momentum 54–58, BM138
– spread in position 53–58, BM138–141
– time transformation function 49, 50, 66, BM135–137, PE30
– uncertainty ellipse 56–58
–– constant area 58
Fourier, Jean Baptiste Joseph 3, BM119, PE21
Fourier integration 173
Fourier transformation 2, 15, 16, 46, BM119
Fourier's theorem BM119
free particle *see* force-free motion
frequency
– circular ∼ BM158
– relative ∼ BM48
Frullani, Giuliano PE170
g-factor PE132
– anomalous ∼ PE132
gauge function PE169
Gauss, Karl Friedrich 50, BM124, PE80
Gauss's theorem PE80
gaussian integral 50, BM125, 146, 203
gaussian moment 3
generating function
– Fock states 83
– Hermite polynomials 176, BM168
– Laguerre polynomials 119
– Legendre polynomials 122
– spherical harmonics 124
generator 92, BM128, 130, PE32–34
– unitary transformation 92, 129
Gerlach, Walther BM9, 12, 193, PE115
Glauber, Roy Jay 81
golden rule PE48, 51
– applied to photon emission PE53–54
– applied to scattering PE87
Gordan, Paul Albert PE122
gradient 98, BM11, PE81
– spherical coordinates 109
Green, George 158, PE94
Green's function PE94
– asymptotic form PE96, 97
Green's operator PE101
ground state BM143, 185
– degenerate ∼s PE71
– harmonic oscillator 75, BM172
– instantaneous ∼ PE70
– square-well potential BM186
– two-electron atoms PE151
ground-state energy 131
– constant restoring force 134
– delta potential BM187
– harmonic oscillator BM163
– lowest upper bound 133
– Rayleigh–Ritz estimate 132
– second-order correction 141
gyromagnetic ratio *see* g-factor

half-transparent mirror BM2, 4
Hamilton, William Rowan 39, 42, BM82, PE27
Hamilton function 39, BM129
– and energy 39
Hamilton operator 39, BM82, 84, 86, 130, PE27
– and system energy 39
– arbitrary ∼ BM131
– atom–photon interaction PE53, 63
– bounded from below BM143, 154
– center-of-mass motion PE140
– charge in magnetic field PE125–127
– constant force 58, BM153, PE35
– driven two-level atom PE64
– eigenbras 86
– eigenstates BM149
– eigenvalues BM149
–– degeneracy BM150, PE128
– electron in magnetic field PE132
– equivalent ∼s BM85–86
– force-free motion 49, 171, BM131, 135, PE30
– harmonic oscillator 66, 68, 72–74, 85, BM158, 163, 164
– hydrogenic atoms 113
– matrix representation PE68
– metrical dimension 39
– photon PE52, 63
– relative motion PE140
– rotation PE116
– spherical symmetry 108
– three-level atom PE72
– time-dependent ∼ 40, BM84, PE28
– time-dependent force 62
– two electrons PE139
– two-dimensional oscillator 89, 106
– two-electron atoms PE149
– two-level atom PE52, 68
– typical form 41, 155, BM132, 148, PE80
–– virial theorem 128
Hamilton's equation of motion 42, 43, PE28
hard-sphere potential PE110, 174
– bound states PE113
– impenetrable sphere PE113
– low-energy scattering PE112
harmonic oscillator 66, BM158–172
– anharmonic perturbation 141
– bases BM170
– eigenenergies BM162
– energy scale 75
– ground state 75, BM172
– ground-state energy BM163
– ground-state wave function BM164
– Hamilton operator 66, 68, 72–74, 85, BM158, 163, 164
–– eigenkets 76
–– eigenvalues 76
– Heisenberg equation 66, 71, 84, BM158
– ladder operators 76, 174, BM166, PE52, 176
– length scale 73, 75, BM159
– momentum scale 73, 75
– momentum spread 174, BM172
– no-force limit 70, 71
– position spread 174, BM172
– Schrödinger equation 68, BM158
– time transformation function 67, 70, 84, 85, 88, 174
– two-dimensional isotropic ∼ *see* two-dimensional oscillator
– virial theorem 129
– wave functions BM163, 165, 167–169
–– orthonormality BM169
– WKB approximation 160, 180
Hartree, Douglas Rayner PE159
Hartree–Fock equations PE159
Hausdorff, Felix 36
Heaviside, Oliver 163, BM208
Heaviside's step function 163, BM208
Heisenberg, Werner 31, 42, 172, BM2, 84, 115, 123, PE19, 27

Heisenberg commutator 31, 38, BM115, PE19, 22
– for vector components 97
– invariance BM115
Heisenberg equation (*see also* Heisenberg's equation of motion) 42, 43, 74, BM84, PE27
– and Schrödinger equation 171
– constant force 58, BM153, PE35
– force-free motion 49, BM137, 138
– formal solution BM149
– general force BM148
– harmonic oscillator 66, 71, 84, BM158
– solving the ∼s BM149
– special cases 44
– Stern–Gerlach apparatus BM192
– time-dependent force 62
Heisenberg picture PE45
Heisenberg's
– equation of motion (*see also* Heisenberg equation) 42, 43, BM2, PE27
– formulation of quantum mechanics BM115
– uncertainty relation BM123
Heisenberg–Born commutator *see* Heisenberg commutator
helium 154, PE148
helium ion 113
Hellmann, Hans 125, PE133
Hellmann–Feynman theorem 125–127, 140, 149, 179, PE133
Hermite, Charles 10, 176, BM77, PE4
Hermite polynomials BM162, 168–170
– differential equation BM162
– generating function 176, BM168
– highest power BM162
– orthogonality BM169
– Rodrigues formula BM168
– symmetry BM162
hermitian conjugate *see* adjoint
hermitian operator 168, BM76–77, PE4
– eigenvalues BM77, PE165
– reality property 168, PE165
Hilbert, David 11, 182, BM78, PE2
Hilbert space 11, BM78, PE2
Hilbert–Schmidt inner product 182, BM78
Hund, Friedrich Hermann BM191
hydrogen atom (*see also* hydrogenic atoms) 113
hydrogen ion PE148, 154
hydrogenic atoms
– and two-dimensional oscillator 115
– axis vector 116
– Bohr energies 125, 150
– Bohr shells 125
– bound states 116
– degeneracy 116
– eigenstates 115
– eigenvalues 115
– Hamilton operator 113
– Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector 117
– mean distance 127
– natural scales 113
– radial wave functions 121
–– orthonormality 122
– scattering states 116
– Schrödinger equation 113
– total angular momentum PE123
– virial theorem 129
– wave functions 121–124
– WKB approximation 180

identity operator 13, BM37, PE3
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– square of ∼ BM106
– square root of ∼ PE65, 67
– trace BM53, 61
indeterminism *see* determinism, lack of ∼
indistinguishable particles PE139
– kets and bras PE141
– permutation invariance of observables PE139
– scattering of ∼ PE144–148
infinitesimal

– change of dynamics PE30, 32
– changes of kets and bras PE32
– endpoint variations BM128
– path variations BM130
– rotation 99, BM87
– time intervals BM80
– time step 39
– transformation 92
– unitary transformation BM81
– variation 69
– variations of an operator PE36
inner product 5, 11, BM35, PE2
– Hilbert–Schmidt ∼ 182, BM78
– of bras 12, BM35, 77
– of columns 5, BM35
– of kets 11, BM35, 77
– of operators 182, BM78
– of rows 5, BM35
integrating factor 60, 157, BM154
interaction picture PE45, 65
interference BM156, PE5
inverse, unique ∼ BM19

Jacobi, Carl Gustav Jacob 100, BM84
Jacobi identity 100
– for commutators BM84
– for vectors BM212
Jeffreys, Harold 158

Kelvin, Lord ∼ *see* Thomson, William
Kennard, Earle Hesse 172, BM123
Kepler, Johannes 116
Kepler ellipse 116
ket 9–15, BM31–34, PE1
– adjoint of a ∼ BM34, PE1
– analog of column-type vector 10
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for kets
– basis ∼s BM35, 70
– column for ∼ BM96, 101
– eigen∼ BM42–46
– entangled ∼ BM60
– infinite column for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of kets
– metrical dimension 17
– normalization of ∼s BM35, 69
– orthogonality of ∼s BM35, 69
– orthonormal ∼s BM36
– phase arbitrariness 28
– physical ∼ 10, 12
– reference ∼ BM33
– row of ∼s BM36, 50
– tensor product of ∼s BM59, PE144
ket-bra (*see also* operator) 21, BM37, 38
– adjoint of a ∼ BM37
– tensor products of ∼s BM59
kinetic energy 41, 105, 111, BM131
kinetic momentum BM130
Kirkwood, John Gamble 169
Kirkwood operators 169
Kramers, Hendrik Anthony 158
Kronecker, Leopold 4, BM69, PE3
Kronecker's delta symbol *see* delta symbol

ladder operators BM166
– angular momentum 102, PE118
– commutation relation 78, BM164
– differentiation with respect to ∼ 78
– eigenbras 79
– eigenkets 77
– eigenvalues 77
– harmonic oscillator 76, 174, BM166, PE52, 176
– lowering operator BM166
– normal ordering 80, 174, 175
– orbital angular momentum 102, 104
– raising operator BM166
– two-dimensional oscillator 93, 94, PE129
Lagrange, Joseph Louis de BM127, PE157
Lagrange function BM128
Lagrange parameter PE157
Lagrange's variational principle BM127

Laguerre, Edmond 108
Laguerre polynomials 119
– generating function 119
– Rodrigues formula 119
Lamb, Willis Eugene PE58
Lamb shift PE58
Langer, Rudolph Ernest 162
Langer's replacement 163
Laplace, Pierre Simon de 117, PE60
Laplace differential operator 178
Laplace transform PE60
– inverse ∼ PE61
– of convolution integral PE61
Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector 117
Laplacian *see* Laplace differential operator
Larmor, Joseph BM90
Larmor precession BM90, 208
Legendre, Adrien Marie 122, PE106
Legendre function 122
Legendre polynomials 122, PE106
– generating function 122
– orthonormality PE107
Lenz, Wilhelm 117
light quanta BM2
Liouville, Joseph 44, PE29
Liouville's equation of motion 44
Lippmann, Bernard Abram PE46
Lippmann–Schwinger equation PE77, 98, 101
– asymptotic form PE98
– Born approximation PE100
– exact solution PE104
– iteration PE46
– scattering operator PE46
lithium ion 113, PE148
locality BM6, 7
Lord Kelvin *see* Thomson, William
Lord Nelson *see* Rutherford, Ernest
Lord Rayleigh *see* Strutt, John William
Lorentz, Hendrik Antoon PE60, 125
Lorentz force PE125
Lorentz profile PE60

Maccone, Lorenzo BM205
Maccone–Pati uncertainty relation BM205
magnetic field BM19
– charge in ∼
–– circular motion PE130–132
–– Hamilton operator PE125–127
–– Lorentz force PE127
–– probability current PE177
–– velocity operator PE125
– homogeneous ∼ BM14, 27, 38, 39, 79, 90, PE127
– inhomogeneous ∼ BM9
– potential energy of magnetic moment in ∼ BM10
– vector potential PE125
magnetic interaction energy BM84, 98, 202, PE132
magnetic moment BM10, 90, PE115
– force on ∼ BM11
– potential energy of ∼ in magnetic field BM10
– rotating ∼ PE115
– torque on ∼ BM10
many-electron atoms
– binding energy PE161
– outermost electrons PE164
– size PE163
matrices
– 2×2 ∼ BM15
– infinite ∼ BM170–171
– Pauli ∼ *see* Pauli matrices
– projection ∼ BM26
– square ∼ BM15
– transformation ∼ 7
Maxwell, James Clerk BM1
Maxwell's equations BM2
mean value 19, BM49, 111
measurement
– disturbs the system BM31
– equivalent ∼s BM80
– nonselective ∼ BM55–57
– result BM48, PE2
– with many outcomes BM68–73
Mermin, Nathaniel David BM66
Mermin's table BM66
mesa function 24

metrical dimension
– bra and ket 17, PE22
– Hamilton operator 39
– Planck's constant 18, 39
– wave function 17
model BM191
momentum BM129
– canonical ∼ PE126
– classical position-dependent ∼ 156
– kinetic ∼ BM130, PE126
momentum operator 21, BM112–114, 130
– differentiation with respect to ∼ 31, 78, 98, 170, BM207, PE22
– expectation value 55, BM119–120
– functions of ∼ 21, BM117
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– spread 54, BM138, 172
– vector operator 97
momentum state 15
– completeness of ∼s 15, BM115
– orthonormality of ∼s 15, BM115
motion
– to the left 156, BM150, 180, PE84
– to the right 156, BM150, 180, PE84

Nelson, Lord ∼ *see* Rutherford, Ernest
Newton, Isaac BM1, 158, PE91
Newton's equation of motion BM2, 128, 158
Newton's theorem PE179
Noether, Emmy 92
Noether's theorem 92
normal ordering 80, 174, 175
– binomial factor 175
normalization BM27
– force-free states BM152
– state density PE52
– statistical operator 27
– wave function 2, 3, 12, BM110

observables PE1
– complementary ∼ PE5, 11, 14, 26
– mutually exclusive ∼ PE5
– undetermined ∼ PE27
odd state (*see also* even state) 138, BM153, 163, 178, 183
operator (*see also* ket-bra) BM37, PE1
– adjoint of an ∼ BM37
– antinormal ordering 81
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for operators
– characteristic function 170
– equal ∼ functions BM72
– evolution ∼ *see* evolution operator
– function of an ∼ BM71, 72, PE4
–– unitary transformation of ∼∼ 34, BM201, PE18
–– varying a ∼∼ PE36, 37, 169
– hermitian ∼ *see* hermitian operator
– identity ∼ *see* identity operator
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of operators
– logarithm of an ∼ PE170
– normal ∼ 182, BM200, 201
– normal ordering 80
– not normal ∼ BM201
– ordered ∼ function 30–33, PE12–14, 166
– Pauli ∼s *see* Pauli operators
– Pauli vector ∼ *see* Pauli vector operator
– projection ∼ *see* projector
– reaction ∼ *see* reaction operator
– scalar ∼ 102
– scattering ∼ *see* scattering operator
– spectral decomposition 21, BM72, 81, PE3, 4
– spread BM120
– statistical ∼ *see* statistical operator
– unitary ∼ *see* unitary operator
– variance BM121
– vector ∼ 102, 177

optical theorem PE102, 175
orbital angular momentum 95, 98, PE116, 117
– commutators 99–102
– eigenkets 104
– eigenstates 102
– eigenvalues 95, 102, 104
– ladder operators 102, 104
– vector operator 98
–– cartesian components 93, 98, 99
ordered exponential 32
orthogonality BM35, PE3
– of kets BM35, 69
orthohelium BM69
orthonormality 6, BM69, 81, PE3, 20, 22, 24
– angular-momentum states 103
– azimuthal wave functions 121
– Fock states 175, 176, BM169
– force-free states BM153
– Legendre polynomials PE107
– momentum states 15, BM115
– position states 12, 15, BM106
– radial wave functions 121, 122
– spherical harmonics 122
– time dependence 38
overidealization 10, BM109

partial waves
– for incoming plane wave PE107
– for scattering amplitude PE109
– for total wave PE108
particle
– identical ∼s *see* indistinguishable particles
– indistinguishable ∼s *see* indistinguishable particles
Pati, Arun Kumar BM205
Pauli, Wolfgang 105, BM40, PE115, 142
Pauli matrices BM38–40, PE177
Pauli operators BM38–40, 47
– functions of ∼ BM40–41
– nonstandard matrices for ∼ BM197, 198
– standard matrices for ∼ BM40, 198
– trace of ∼ BM53
– uncertainty relation BM206
Pauli vector operator 105, BM40, 52, PE115
– algebraic properties BM40
– commutator of components BM88
– component of ∼ BM44
Peierls, Rudolf Ernst PE104
permutation
– cyclic ∼ PE7, 16
persistence probability PE49
perturbation theory BM149, PE37
– Brillouin–Wigner *see* Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory
– for degenerate states 148–155
– Rayleigh–Schrödinger *see* Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory
phase factor 61, BM28
phase shift BM178
phase space 56
phase-space function 30, 33
phase-space integral 32, 33, 164
photoelectric effect BM46
photon BM2
– Hamilton operator PE52, 63
photon emission PE52–62
– golden rule PE53–54
– probability of no ∼ PE59
– Weisskopf–Wigner method PE54–60
photon mode PE54, 55
photon-pair source BM4
Placzek, George PE104
Planck, Max Karl Ernst Ludwig 3, BM82, PE19
Planck's constant 3, BM82, PE19
– metrical dimension 18, 39
Poisson, Siméon Denis PE23
Poisson identity PE23
polar angle 109
polar coordinates 105
polarizability 155

position operator 20, BM110–112
– delta function of ∼ BM174
– differentiation with respect to ∼ 31, 78, 98, 170, BM148, PE22
– expectation value 55, BM111
– functions of ∼ 20, BM111
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– spread 54, BM138, 172
– vector operator 97
position state 15
– completeness of ∼s 15, BM106
– orthonormality of ∼s 12, 15, BM106
position–momentum correlation 55, 59, 172
potential energy 41, 109
– effective ∼ 111, PE158
– localized ∼ PE82, 86
– separable ∼ PE87, 173
potential well BM174
power series method BM159–162
prediction *see* statistical prediction
principal quantum number 115
principal value PE58
– model for ∼ PE62
probabilistic laws BM4
probabilistic prediction *see* statistical prediction
probability 1, 13, BM20–29, PE2, 79
– amplitude 2, 13, BM20–29, 33, 34, 36, 105, PE2
–– column of ∼s BM92, 94
–– time dependent ∼∼ BM90–94, 102
– as expectation value 24, BM49
– conditional ∼ 2, BM65
– continuity equation PE80, 172
– current density PE79, 81, 99
–– charge in magnetic field PE177
– density 1, BM110, PE79
– flux of ∼ PE79
– for reflection BM181, 188, 190
– for transmission BM181, 188, 190
– fundamental symmetry 13, BM73, PE2
– local conservation law PE80
– of no change BM141–148
–– long times BM142
–– short times BM142, 143
– transition ∼ *see* transition probability
probability operator *see* statistical operator
product rule
– adjoint 18
– commutator 31, 186, BM84
– transposition 5
– variation PE181
projection BM26
– matrices BM26
– operator *see* projector
projector 182, BM26, 41, 47, 110, 111, PE8, 10
– on atomic state PE52
– to an x state BM174
property, objective ∼ BM13, 60

quantum action principle PE32–39
quantum state estimation BM65
qubit BM68

Rabi, Isidor Isaac PE53
Rabi frequency PE53, 54, 66
– modified ∼ PE67, 78
– time dependent ∼ PE63, 71
radial density 122
radial quantum number 107
radial Schrödinger equation 111, PE106
Rayleigh, Lord ∼ *see* Strutt, John William
Rayleigh–Ritz method 131–138, PE151, 157
– best scale 134
– excited states 137–138
– scale-invariant version 136
– trial wave function 132
Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory 138–143, 146, 148
reaction operator PE170
reflection

– above barrier ∼ BM208
– symmetry BM150
relative frequency BM48
relative motion
– Hamilton operator PE140
– momentum operator PE140
– position operator PE140
residue BM177, PE96
Riemann, Georg Friedrich Bernhard PE21
Ritz, Walther 132
Robertson, Howard Percy BM122
Robertson's uncertainty relation BM122, 204
Rodrigues, Benjamin Olinde 119, BM168
Rodrigues formula
– Hermite polynomials BM168
– Laguerre polynomials 119
Rohrer, Heinrich BM191
rotation 8, 90, PE25
– consecutive ∼s 100–101
– Hamilton operator PE116
– internal ∼ PE116
– orbital ∼ PE116
– rigid ∼ PE116
– unitary operator 93, 99
row BM25
– eigen∼ BM96
– for bra BM96, 101
– of coordinates 4
– of kets BM36, 50
row-type vector 4
– analog of bra 10
Runge, Carl David Tolmé 117
Rutherford, Ernest (Lord Nelson) PE91
Rutherford cross section PE91
Ry *see* Rydberg constant
Rydberg, Janne 114, PE150
Rydberg constant 114, PE150

s-wave scattering PE110–114
– delta-shell potential PE176
– hard-sphere potential PE112
scalar product (*see also* inner product) 5
scaling transformation 130
– and virial theorem 130
scattering BM181, PE82–114
– Born series PE102
– by localized potential PE86
– cross section
–– Coulomb potential PE91
–– golden-rule approximation PE89
–– Rutherford ∼∼ PE91
–– separable potential PE173
–– Yukawa potential PE91
– deflection angle PE90, 106, 175
– elastic ∼ PE88
– elastic potential ∼ PE89
– electron-electron ∼ PE144–147
– forward ∼ PE102
– golden rule PE87
– in and out states PE92
– incoming flux PE88
– inelastic ∼ PE88
– interaction region PE86, 97
– low-energy ∼ *see* *s*-wave scattering
– of *s*-waves *see* *s*-wave scattering
– of indistinguishable particles PE144–148
– right-angle ∼ PE146
– separable potential PE104
– spherically symmetry potential PE89
– transition matrix element PE89
– transition operator PE100–175
–– separable potential PE105
scattering amplitude PE98
– and scattering cross section PE100
– and scattering phases PE109
– and transition operator PE101
– partial waves PE109
scattering cross section PE88
– and scattering amplitude PE100
– and scattering phases PE110
scattering matrix PE86
scattering operator PE44, 76

– Born series PE45
– equation of motion PE76
– integral equation PE45
– Lippmann–Schwinger equation PE46
scattering phase PE109
scattering states BM181
– delta potential BM178–181
– hydrogenic atoms 116
– square-well potential BM187–191
Schmidt, Erhard 182, BM78
Schrödinger, Erwin 1, 40, 138, 172, BM2, 60, 83, 114, 117, 159, PE25, 27
Schrödinger equation (*see also* Schrödinger's equation of motion) 40, 43, BM2, 83, PE27
– and Heisenberg equation 171
– driven two-level atom PE64, 65
– evolution operator PE75
– for bras 40, BM83, PE27
– for column of amplitudes BM94
– for kets 40, BM83, PE27
– for momentum wave function BM131, 133
– for position wave function 41, BM131, 132
– force-free motion 49, 50, BM135
– formal solution 86
– harmonic oscillator 68
– initial condition BM131
– radial ∼ *see* radial Schrödinger equation
– solving the ∼ 45
– time independent ∼ 156, BM96, 100, PE83
–– constant force BM153, 154
–– delta potential BM175, 178
–– force-free motion BM150
–– harmonic oscillator BM158
–– hydrogenic atoms 113
–– spherical coordinates 110
–– square-well potential BM187
–– two-dimensional oscillator 106, 115
– time transformation function 45, 46
– two-level atom PE55
Schrödinger picture PE45
Schrödinger's
– equation of motion (*see also* Schrödinger equation) 40, BM83, PE27
– formulation of quantum mechanics BM114
– uncertainty relation 172, BM204
Schur, Issai PE167
Schur's lemma PE167
Schwarz, Hermann 13
Schwinger, Julian 81, PE15, 33, 46, 162, 177
Schwinger representation PE176
Schwinger's quantum action principle PE32–39
Scott, John Moffett Cuthbert PE162
Scott correction PE162
Segal, Irving Ezra 81
selection BM13
– successive ∼s BM13, 17
selector BM13, 16
selfadjoint *see* hermitian
SG *acronym* Stern–Gerlach
short-range force BM174
sign function 169, BM173
– and step function 182
silver atom BM9, 10, 48, 57, 87, 97, 202, 206, PE115
single-photon counter BM3
singlet PE123, 143, 146
– projector on ∼ PE179
Slater, John Clarke PE144
Slater determinant PE144, 159
solid angle PE87
solid harmonics 123
spectral decomposition 21, BM72, 81, PE3, 13, 21
speed PE126
speed of light PE125
spherical Bessel functions PE107
– asymptotic form PE107

spherical coordinates 108, 109, BM44, PE89, 94
– gradient 109
– local unit vectors 109
– position vector 109
– Schrödinger equation 110
spherical harmonics 122, PE106
– differential equation 123
– examples 123
– generating function 124
– orthonormality 122
– symmetry 123
spherical wave
– incoming ∼ PE108, 109
– interferes with plane wave PE102
– outgoing ∼ PE98, 99, 108
spin 105, BM10, PE117
spin–orbit coupling PE137
spin–statistics theorem PE142
spread BM120
– and variance BM121
– geometrical significance BM145
– in energy BM144, 146
– in momentum 54, BM138
– in position 54, BM138
– vanishing ∼ BM145
spreading of the wave function 54, 56, BM139, 141, PE183
square-well potential BM182–191
– above-barrier reflection BM208
– attractive ∼ BM187
– bound states BM182–186
– count of bound states 180
– ground state BM186
– reflection probability BM188, 190
– repulsive ∼ BM187
– scattering states BM187–191
– Schrödinger equation BM187
– transmission probability BM188, 190
– tunneling BM187–191
Stark, Johannes 153, PE137
Stark effect
– linear ∼ 153
– quadratic ∼ 154
state (*see also* statistical operator) BM52
– bound ∼s *see* bound states
– coherent ∼s *see* coherent states
– entangled ∼ *see* entangled state
– even ∼ *see* even state
– Fock ∼s *see* Fock states
– mixed ∼ 27, 29
– odd ∼ *see* odd state
– of minimum uncertainty BM123–126
– of the system 3, BM1, 2
– pure ∼ 28, 29
– reduction BM64–65
–– is a mental process BM65
– scattering ∼s *see* scattering states
– vector BM33
state density PE51
– normalization PE52
state of affairs 3, 9, 23, BM1
state operator *see* statistical operator
stationary phase BM156
statistical operator 23, 26, BM121, PE26
– blend 27, BM55
–– as-if reality 27, BM55
– Born rule BM51–55
– for atom pairs BM58, 61
– inferred from data 26
– mixture 27, BM55
–– many blends for one ∼ 27, BM55
– nature of the ∼ BM65
– normalization 27
– positivity 27
– represents information 26, BM56, 65
– time dependence 44, BM86, PE28
– time-dependent force 173
statistical prediction 2, 26, BM4, 8, 65
– verification of a ∼ 2, BM22
step function 163, BM208
– and sign function 182
Stern, Otto BM9, 12, 193, PE115

Stern–Gerlach
– apparatus BM47, 48, 69, 195, 196
–– entangles BM193
–– equations of motion BM192
–– generalization BM69
– experiment BM9–12, 27, 46, 191–193, 206
–– displacement BM193
–– Larmor precession BM208
–– momentum transfer BM193
– magnet BM10, 12, 196, PE115
– measurement BM21, 23, 27, 32, 147
– successive ∼ measurements BM12–15
Stirling, James BM161
Stirling's approximation BM161
Strutt, John William (Lord Rayleigh) 124, 132, 138
surface element PE79
swindle PE50
symmetry
– and degeneracy 90, 116, BM150
– reflection ∼ BM150

Taylor, Brook BM112
Taylor expansion BM156
Taylor's theorem BM112
tensor product BM59–60
– and brackets BM59
– of bras BM59
– of identities BM61
– of ket-bras BM59
– of kets BM59, PE119, 144
Thomas, Llewellyn Hilleth PE162
Thomas–Fermi energy PE162
Thomson, William (Lord Kelvin) 122
three-level atom PE71
– Hamilton operator PE72
time dependence
– dynamical ∼ 43, 44, 88, BM84, PE28
– parametric ∼ 40, 43, 44, 88, BM84, PE28
time ordering PE46
– exponential function PE47
time transformation function 45–47, 87, BM133–134, PE29
– as a Fourier sum 88
– constant force 61, 173, PE36
– dependence on labels 51
– force-free motion 49, 50, 66, BM135–137, PE30
– harmonic oscillator 67, 70, 84, 85, 88, 174
– initial condition 45, 46, BM134, 206
– Schrödinger equation 45, 46
– time-dependent force 63–66
– turning one into another 46, BM134
time-dependent force
– Hamilton operator 62
– Heisenberg equation 62
– spread in momentum 63
– spread in position 63
– statistical operator 173
– time transformation function 63–66
Tom and Jerry BM57–65
torque on magnetic moment BM10
trace 22, BM49–51, PE14
– as diagonal sum BM50
– as sum of eigenvalues BM198, PE68
– cyclic property 25, BM51
– linearity 23, BM50
– of ordered operator 32
– of Pauli operators BM53
– of the identity operator BM53, 61
transformation function 16, BM116, 118, PE22
– time ∼ *see* time transformation function
transition PE47, 48
– frequency BM97, 103, PE49
– operator (*see also* scattering, transition operator) PE52, 100
– probability PE48, 49, 51
– rate PE49, 51, 54, 87
translation

– unitary operator 93
transposition 4, 10
– of a product 5
trial wave function 132
triplet PE123, 143, 146
– projector on ∼ PE179
tunnel diode BM191
tunnel effect BM191
tunnel transistor BM191
tunneling microscope BM191
tunneling probability BM191
two-dimensional oscillator 89–95, PE129
– and hydrogenic atoms 115
– degeneracy 90
– eigenstates 90, 93–95, 106
– Fock states 94
– Hamilton operator 89, 106
– ladder operators 93, 94, PE129
– radial wave functions 121
–– orthonormality 121
– rotational symmetry 90
– Schrödinger equation 106, 115
– wave functions 117–121
two-electron atoms PE148–158
– binding energy PE154
– direct energy PE155
– exchange energy PE155
– ground state PE151
– Hamilton operator PE149
– interaction energy PE152
– single-particle energy PE152
two-level atom
– adiabatic evolution PE68–71
– driven ∼ PE62–71
–– Hamilton operator PE64
–– Schrödinger equation PE64, 65
– frequency shift PE58, 62
– Hamilton operator PE52, 68
– instantaneous eigenstate PE71
– periodic drive PE66
– projector on atomic state PE52
– resonant drive PE65
– Schrödinger equation PE55
– transition operator PE52
– transition rate PE54, 58, 62
unbiased bases PE6
uncertainty ellipse 56–58
– area 57, 173
uncertainty principle BM123
uncertainty relation BM120–123, 204, 205
– for Pauli operators BM206
– Heisenberg's ∼ BM123
–– and Kennard BM123
–– and Schrödinger 172
–– more stringent form 172
– of the Maccone–Pati kind BM205
– physical content BM123
– Robertson's ∼ BM122, 204
– Schrödinger's ∼ BM204
uncertainty, state of minimum ∼ BM123–126, 206
unit
– atomic-scale ∼s BM82
– macroscopic ∼s BM82
unit matrix BM26
unit vector BM44
unitary operator 19, 168, BM73–77, PE4
– eigenvalues BM76, PE165
– for cyclic permutations PE7
– for shifts PE24
– maps bases BM75
– period PE7
– rotation 93, 99
– transforms operator function 34, BM201, PE18
– translation 93
unitary transformation 38, 92
– generator 92, 129
uphill motion BM155

variance (*see also* spread) BM121, 138, 145
– geometrical significance BM145
vector BM32
– coordinates of a ∼ BM32
– state ∼ BM33
vector potential
– asymmetric choice PE128
– symmetric choice PE128

vector space 9
velocity BM138, PE80, 125
– commutation relation PE126
virial theorem 128, 130
– and scaling transformation 130
– harmonic oscillator 129
– hydrogenic atoms 129
von Neumann, John 44, BM86, PE29
von Neumann equation BM86, PE29

wave function 1, BM105
– its sole role 2
– momentum ∼ 2, BM118
–– metrical dimension 17
– normalization 2, 3, 12, BM110
– position ∼ 2, BM118
–– metrical dimension 17
– spreading *see* spreading of the wave function
– trial ∼ 132
wave train BM123
wave–particle duality BM46
Weisskopf, Victor Frederick PE54
Wentzel, Gregor 158
Wentzel–Kramers–Brillouin *see* WKB
Weyl, Claus Hugo Hermann 34, PE12, 15, 166
Weyl commutator 34, PE12
Weyl's operator basis PE166, 181
Wigner, Eugene Paul 143, PE54, 134
Wigner–Eckart theorem PE134
WKB *acronym* Wentzel–Kramers–Brillouin
WKB approximation 155–165
– harmonic oscillator 160, 180
– hydrogenic atoms 180
– reliability criterion 159
WKB quantization rule 160, 161, 165
– in three dimensions 162
– Langer's replacement 163

Yukawa, Hideki PE90
Yukawa potential PE90
– double ∼ PE174
– scattering cross section PE91

Zeeman, Pieter PE137
Zeeman effect PE137
Zeilinger, Anton BM63
Zeno effect BM29–31, 148
Zeno of Elea BM31